

新概念英語 2

New Concept English

课程笔记

胶囊助学计划

使用指南

首先，非常开心大家能喜欢我们的课程。之前常常有学员询问有没有课后练习的电子版文件或者PPT文件，想要打印出来，方便学习。基于此，我们设计制作了这本专门针对我们的视频课程的学习手册（课程笔记和课后练习）。这本手册的内容设置和视频课程的学习顺序是完全吻合的。这样在学习视频的时候，省去做笔记的时间，可以更专注的听课，做知识点的标注。

除此之外，我们在每一个偶数课后设置了笔记页，笔记页采用了康奈尔笔记法的布局。Questions位置来记录你遇到的问题；Homework位置来完成你的课后作业；Summary & Recap位置来进行回忆和总结核心知识点。如右图所示。

本手册的所有权归胶囊助学计划所有，且为付费产品。我们只在胶囊助学计划的官方【微店】进行售卖，如果您是从除此之外的任何地方购买此商品，欢迎您告诉我们，并随手举报。

本作品售价：14.9 RMB，且需要配合B站(哔哩哔哩)免费视频课程使用，[点击后方文字→“胶囊助学计划”或扫描下方二维码来学习](#)。如果您是从任何地方免费获得此商品的，欢迎关注微信公众号：[jiaonangzhuxue](#)，以打赏的方式支持我们付出的辛苦，当然微信公众号中还有更多的学习资源免费提供给大家。

在制作的过程中难免有错误，欢迎指出。我们会做出调整。或者您有任何关于本手册的想法都可以发送 E-mail 告诉我们。

E-mail: capsuleacademy@icloud.com



Questions

问题

Homework

课后作业

Summary & Recap

总结知识点

It's never too late to learn.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96
○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

/'prɔɪvɪt/
private adj. + n.

1 private life; private school; private hospital
2 go to a private school NCE1L55
He goes to a private school.
Does he go to a private school?
Why does he go to a private school?

/kɒnvə'seɪʃn/
conversation n.

1 have a conversation NCE1L31 & L71
We are having a conversation. Please be quiet.
I had a conversation with him yesterday.
When did you have a conversation with him?
2 a private conversation
This is a private conversation.

/'θɪətre/
theatre n. cinema

1 go to a theatre NCE1L85
I've never been to that theatre.
Have you ever been to that theatre?

/si:t/
seat n.

1 have a good seat
I had a good seat.
Why did you have a good seat?
2 take a seat
3 Is the seat taken?

/pleɪ/
play n.

1 watch a play NCE1L37
I am going to watch a play with my Mum. (when)

/laʊdli/
loudly adv.

1 talk loudly
You are talking too loudly.
Why are you talking so loudly?
Don't talk so loudly in the theatre.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/'æŋgrɪ/
angry adj. angrily adv.

1 He was very angry yesterday.
When was he very angry?
Why was he very angry yesterday?
2 look at her angrily
He looked at her angrily this morning.

/ə'tenʃn/
attention

1 pay attention
They did not pay any attention.
Did they pay any attention?

/beəl / bɔ:l / bɔ:n/
bear-bore-borne v.

1 [Story]: I could not bear it.
I can't bear that.
Can you bear that?
How can you bear that?

/'bɪzɪnɪs/
business

1 business man
2 It's none of your business.

/'ru:dli/
rudely adv. rude adj.

1 Don't be rude. Let him in.
2 talk rudely NCE1L117
He was talking to her rudely.
How was he talking to her?

- **have a conversation**
- **take a seat**
- **Is the seat taken?**
- **pay attention**
- **How can you bear that?**
- **Don't be rude**

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

1 Grammar

如何造一个英文句子?

1. 天黑了

night 无主语

2. 他们累了

They tired 无v.

3. 他们在等

They wait for Godot 无v.变化

1. 句子要有主语 天黑了

It is night.

2. 句子要有v. 他们累了

They are tired.

3. v. 要有变化 他们在等

They are waiting for Godot.

如何造一个好的英文句子?

A woman is shouting.

+adj. / +adv.(方式)

An ugly woman is shouting angrily.

A cute woman is shouting happily.

+地点

An ugly woman is shouting angrily in her car.

A cute woman is shouting happily on the beach.

+时间

An ugly woman is shouting angrily in her car at midnight.

A cute woman is shouting happily on the beach in the morning.

+ adj. +adv.(方式) +时间 +地点

An ugly woman is shouting angrily in her car at midnight.

A cute woman is shouting happily on the beach in the morning.

6	1	2	3	4	5	6
时间 When	主 Who Which What	谓 action (v.+v.变化)	宾 Who Which What	方式 How	地点 Where	时间 When

1. the film I enjoyed yesterday
2. the news listened to I carefully
3. well the man the piano played
4. games played yesterday in their room the children quietly
5. quietly the door he opened
6. immediately left he
7. a tree in the corner of the garden he planted
8. before lunch the letter in his office quickly he read
9. this morning a book I from the library borrowed
10. the soup spoilt the cook
11. we at home stay on Sundays
12. there a lot of people are at the bus stop
13. the little boy an apple this morning ate greedily in the kitchen
14. she beautifully draws
15. music I like very much
16. a new school built they in our village last year
17. the match at four o'clock ended
18. she a letter from her brother last week received

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study—Test & Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

1 Story+Expressions

- go to the theatre
- have a good seat
- get angry
- turn round
- pay attention
- in the end
- couldn't bear it
- It's none of your business

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

go to the theatre NCE1L125

I had to go to the theatre yesterday.
Did you have to go to the theatre
yesterday?
Why did you have to go to the theatre
yesterday?

have a good seat

[Story]: I had a very good seat.
Did you have a very good seat?

get angry

[Story]: I got very angry.
He got very angry yesterday.
Did he get very angry yesterday?
Why did he get very angry yesterday?
When did he get very angry?

turn round

I turned round.
He always turns round in the class.
Does he always turns round in the
class?
How often

pay attention

[Story]: They did not pay any
attention.
Did they pay any attention?

in the end

In the end, My mum and I went to the
theatre.
Did your mum and you go to the
theatre, in the end?
Where did your mum and you go in
the end?

couldn't bear it

I can't bear it.
Can you bear it?
How can you bear it?

It's none of your business.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

1 Practices

新概念英语（第二册）视频当中出现的所有练习（包括但不限于Practice视频中出现的所有练习），我们是免费提供给大家的，可在【胶囊助学计划】的微店（即您购买本产品的商店）获取下载链接。因微店不支持0元上架，故我们设置了0.1元的价格，您可以无条件申请退款。

homework

- 
1. Ask me if 写&朗读
 2. 摘要写作 写&答案
 3. Tell the story 口语复述

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

2 Grammar

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：现在进行时 NCE1L31–L36

2 含义：一个动作正在发生

3 结构：肯定句 am/is/are+doing

(v.现在分词)

We are having a conversation.

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：现在进行时 NCE1L31–L36

2 含义：一个动作正在发生

3 结构：否定句 am/is/are not + doing

She is not watching play.

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：现在进行时 NCE1L31–L36

2 含义：一个动作正在发生

3 结构：一般疑问句 am/is/are 提句首

Are they talking loudly?

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：现在进行时

2 含义：表近期计划，安排

(红皮书初25&中19)

3 结构：remain the same

I am meeting my friends tonight.

We're having a party next weekend.

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：一般现在时 NCE1L47–L60

2 含义：习惯动作/客观事实

3 结构：肯定句 v./v. (v. 三单)

He goes to that theatre every weekend.

They go to that theatre every weekend.

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：一般现在时 NCE1L47–L60

2 含义：习惯动作/客观事实

3 结构：否定句 do/does + not +v.

He doesn't go to that theatre every weekend.

They don't go to that theatre every weekend.

be+doing VS do/does

1 名称：一般现在时 NCE1L47–L60

2 含义：习惯动作/客观事实

3 结构：一般疑问句 do/does 提句首

Does he go to that theatre every weekend?

Do they go to that theatre every weekend?

What 感叹句 结构:

What + (形容词) + n. + (主语+谓语)

It is a terrible day.

What a terrible day (it is)!

This is a beautiful picture.

What a beautiful picture this is!

This is a wonderful garden.

What a wonderful garden this is!

What A Wonderful World

They are wonderful actors.

What wonderful actors they are!

She is a hard-working woman.

What a hard-working woman she is!

It is a tall building!

What a tall building it is!

You are a clever boy.

What a clever boy you are!

She is a pretty girl.

What a pretty girl she is!

It's a terrible film.

What a terrible film it is!

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

until

[Story]: I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime.
 1 I sometimes eat my dinner until 9.
 2 I sometimes go to bed until 2 a.m.
 3 How often do you go to bed until 2 a.m.?
 4 I couldn't swim until 21.

/aʊt'saɪd/ outside adv. inside

outside adv. inside
 1 Look, there is a dog outside.
 2 [Story]: It was dark, outside.
 Was it dark outside?
 Why was it dark outside.
 3 get inside & get outside

/rɪŋ/ ring-rang-rung v.

[Story]: Just then, the telephone rang.
 1 Did the telephone ring?
 2 When did the telephone ring?
 3 The telephone is ringing.
 4 The phone rings at 8 every night.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/a:nt/ aunt uncle n. + v.

1 meet
 I met her aunt yesterday.
 Did you meet her aunt yesterday?
 Where did you meet her aunt yesterday?

/rɪ'pi:t/ repeat v.

1 repeat after me!
 2 repeat your question.
 Can you repeat your question?
 Come again? & Pardon? & What?
 repeat after me

Story+Expressions

- get up early/late
- just then
- have breakfast

get up early/late

He gets up early everyday.
 Does he get up early everyday?

just then

[Story]: Just then, the telephone rang.
 Just then, my mom came in.
 Just then, he turned round.

习惯用法造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

have breakfast

I usually have breakfast at 8.
 Do you usually have breakfast at 8?

homework

1. 单词&习惯用法造句/对话 【单词&习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'peəstka:d/

postcard n. + v.

1 buy sb. sth.= buy sth. for sb.

I bought a postcard for him this morning.

Did you buy a postcard for him this morning?

Where did you buy a postcard for him this

morning?

2 Where can I buy a postcard?

/sənd/

send-sent-sent v.

1 send me a postcard

2 send sb. sth.= send sth. to sb.

3 My aunt has already sent me a postcard.

/spɔɪl/

spoil-spoiled/spoilt v.

1 The cook spoilt the soup.

Did the cook spoilt the soup? How did the cook spoil the soup?

2 [Story]: Postcards always spoil my holidays.

_____ always spoil my _____.

Postcards spoilt my last summer holiday.

/mju:zɪəm/

museum n. + v.

1 [Story]: I visited museums.

Did you visit that museum in 2018?

When did you visit that museum?

/'pʌblɪk/

public adj. + n.

1 public library; public garden

2 I go to that public garden every Sundays.

3 Do you go to that public garden every Sundays?

/'frendli/

friendly adj.

1 He is very friendly.

2 Kiwi people are very friendly.

3 What a friendly guy.

homework

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'weɪtə/ /'weɪtress/

waiter n. waitress

1 a friendly waiter + v. ?

/lend/

/'bɒrəʊ/

lend-lent-lent borrow

1 lend sb. sth. = lend sth. to sb.

Could you lend me 20\$?

2 borrow sth. from sb. / borrow sth.

I borrowed this book from the public library last week.

/dɪ'sɪʒən/

decision n.

1 make a decision

2 I made a big decision last night.

3 Did you make a decision?

4 When did you make this decision?

/həʊl/

/grain/

whole adj.+ grain n.

1 I like to eat whole grain bread.

2 I want to buy some whole grain bread.

3 whole day/week

4 [Story]: I spent the whole day in my room.

Did you spent the whole day in your room?

/'sɪŋgl/

single

1 [Story]: I did not write a single card.

Why didn't you write a single card.

I am not going to write a single card.

2 She's single.

- buy sb. sth.= buy sth. for sb.

- send sb. sth.= send sth. to sb.

- lend sb. sth. = lend sth. to sb.

- borrow sth. from sb. / borrow sth.

- make a decision

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句

2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

3 Grammar

was & were & did

1 名称：一般过去时 NCE1L67–L70

2 含义：过去的状态

3 结构：肯定句 was were

He was very angry yesterday.

4 结构：否定句 was were+not

He wasn't very angry yesterday.

5 结构：一般疑问句 was were 提句首

Was he very angry yesterday?

1 名称：一般过去时 NCE1L71–L78

2 含义：一个动作发生在过去

3 结构：肯定句 v.ed (v.过去式)

I had breakfast this morning.

4 结构：否定句 did+not & v.变原型

I didn't have breakfast this morning.

5 结构：一般疑问句 did 提句首 & v.变原型

Did you have breakfast this morning?

Story+Expressions

- teach sb. sth.
- lend sb. sth.
- think about sth./sb.
- on the last day
- make a decision
- send sth. to sb.
- spend st. sw.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

teach sb. sth.

Leo teaches me English everyday.

Does Leo teach you English everyday?

Why does Leo teach you English everyday?

on the last day

On the last day, I couldn't bear it. L1

lend sb. sth.

He lent me 20\$ last night.

Did he lend you 20\$ last night?

make a decision

I have to make this decision everyday.

Do you have to make this decision everyday?

how often / why

think about sth./sb.

I think about you every night and day.

send sth. to sb.

[Story]: I did not send cards to my friends.

Did you send cards to your friends?

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法
4. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
5. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/***exciting adj. + n.**

1 an exciting trip

2 I had an exciting trip last summer.

3 have a great trip

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/rɪ'si:v/***receive v.**

1 receive sth. from sb.

I receive a postcard from Zen every year.

I received a postcard from Zen last year.

*/fɜ:m/***firm n. + v.**

1 [Story]: He is working for a big firm.

He has worked for this firm for 3 years.

Has he worked for this firm for 3 years?

How long has he worked for this firm?

*/'dɪfərənt/***different adj.+ n.**

1 different places+v.

go to different places

I like to go to different places.

2 A be different from B

*/'sentə/***centre n.**

1 in the centre of sw. (the map)

2 China is in the centre of this map.

*/ə'b्रə:d/***abroad**

go abroad; live abroad; study abroad

- have a great trip
- receive sth. from sb.
- work for
- A be different from B
- in the centre of sw.
- go abroad
- live abroad
- study abroad

homework

-
1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
-

4 Grammar

have+done 用法一

名称：现在完成时 NCE1L83–L88

含义：过去的事情对现在产生了影响
(言之过去，意在当下)

结构

肯定句 have/has+done

A: I can help to clean his shoes.

B: He has cleaned his shoes.

(His shoes are clean now)

A: Do you want to have dinner with us?

B: I have just had some food.

(I'm full now.)

A: Are they at home?

B: They have gone out.

(They are not at home now.)

否定句 have/has+not+done

I haven't had breakfast.

一般疑问句 have/has提前&done不变

Have you had breakfast?

have+done 用法一

have+done=did+do/does

A: I can help to clean his shoes.

B: He has cleaned his shoes.

(His shoes are clean now)

He cleaned his shoes, and now his

shoes are clean.

have+done=did+do/does

A: Do you want to have dinner with us?

B: I have just had some food.

(I'm full now.)

I had some food, and now I'm full.

have+done=did+do/does

A: Are they at home?

B: They have gone out.

(They are not at home now.)

They went out, and now they are not

at home.

have+done 用法一

名称：现在完成时 NCE1L83–L88

含义：过去的事情对现在产生了影响
(言之过去，意在当下)

结构：肯定句 have/has+done

1. have+done=did+do/does

2. have+done≈did

have+done 用法二
名称：现在完成时 NCE1L89-L90
含义：从过去持续到现在的事情

结构：

肯定句 have/has+done

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012.

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years.

I lived in Beijing for 10 years.

否定句 have/has+not+done

I haven't eaten anything since breakfast.
(from breakfast until now)

一般疑问句 have/has提前&done不变

Have you heard anything from Berlin since yesterday?

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

4 Story+Expressions

- receive sth. from sb.
- work for sb.
- a great number of
- have gone to sw.
- fly to sw.
- find n. adj.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

receive sth. from sb.
sth.?

work for sb.

He has worked for me for 20 years.
Has he worked for you for 20 years?
How long has he worked for you?

a great number of + 复数可数名词

a great number of restaurants
There is a great number of restaurants in Beijing.
A great number of restaurants are opened every year.

have gone to VS have been to
红皮书中17c
Where's Bill?
He's gone to Spain. (He is in Spain now)
Hello, Bill.
Hi, I've been on Holiday. I've been to Spain.
(He went to Spain, but now he is back)

fly to sw.

He flew to New York last week.
He had a very good seat.
But he did not enjoy the trip.
A young man and ...

find n. adj.

1 (主)+ find(v.变化)+ n.+adj.+地点+时间
I found her very beautiful on the stage last night.
Men usually find women very beautiful in the bar at night.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'pi:dʒɪn/***pigeon n. + v.**

- 1 I have just received a pigeon from my brother.
 2 On the last day, I made a decision and sent the pigeon to my friend, Leo.
 3 总结习惯用法

*/'mesɪdʒ/***message n. + v.**

- 1 leave sb. a message
 I left him a message.
 Did you leave him a message?
 Why did you leave him a message?
 2 receive(get) a message/send a message

*/'kʌvə/ /'dɪstəns/***cover v. distance n.**

- 1 [Story]: The bird covered the distance in three minutes.
 Did the bird covered the distance in three minutes?

*/rɪ'kwest/***request n.**

- 1 send a request for sth.
 I have just sent a request for a new computer.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/speə/ /pa:t/***spare part n. + v.**

- 1 I need to buy some spare parts for my car.
 Do you need to buy some spare parts for your car? What do you need to buy for your car?

*/'sɜ:vɪs/***service n.**

- 1 [Story]: He has begun his own private 'telephone' service.
 He began his own private telephone service.
 Did he begin his own private telephone service? How/Why...?
 2 customer service

- leave sb. a message
- customer service
- cover the distance in st.

homework

- 1 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2 总结所有课程习惯用法在 笔记本中(用于造句)
 3 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

5 Grammar

一般过去时

用法	描述发生在过去的动作(did)或状态(was/were) NCE1L67–78	
结构 did was/were v.ed (过去式)	肯定	Tom watched TV last night. Emily was at the office this morning.
	否定	Tom didn't watch TV last night. Emily wasn't at the office this morning.
	一般疑问	Did Tom watch TV last night? Was Emily at the office this morning?
	难点	否定&疑问v. 肯定: v.ed (变化规则VS无规则)

现在完成时

用法1	言之过去，意在当下 NCE2L4	
结构 have+done v.ed done 过去分词	肯定	A: Do you want to have dinner? B: I have just had some food.(I'm full now.)
	否定	have/has + not
	一般疑问	have/has 提句首
	难点	have done VS did v.ed(done 过去分词)

have+done 用法一

have+done=did+do/does

A: I can help to clean his shoes.

B: He has cleaned his shoes.

(His shoes are clean now)

He cleaned his shoes, and now his
shoes are clean.

have+done 用法一

名称: 现在完成时 NCE1L83–L88

含义: 过去的事情对现在产生了影响

(言之过去, 意在当下)

结构: 肯定句 have/has+done

1. have+done=did+do/does

2. have+done≈did

现在完成时

用法2	一个动作done或者状态been 从过去持续或重复到现在 NCE2L4	
结构 have+done v.ed done 过去分词	肯定	I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012. I have been here for 6 years.
	否定	have/has + not
	一般疑问	have/has 提句首
	特殊疑问	How long have you lived in Beijing?
	难点	have lived VS lived? v. 可持续 v.ed (done 过去分词)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

5 Story+Expressions

- A is 5 miles from B
- get sth. for sb.
- cover the distance in st.
- a great many
- send a request for sth.
- up to now
- in this way

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

A is 5 miles from B

Beijing is 662 miles from Shanghai.
Is Beijing 662 miles from Shanghai?

get sth. for sb.

6123456

I can get that for you.
Can you get that for me?
I can't get that for you.
Why can't you get that for me?

cover the distance in st.

[Story]: The bird covered the distance in three minutes.
Did the bird covered the distance in three minutes?

up to now

have+done

I have sent a great number of postcards to him up to now.

a great many+可数名词复数

Last night, we said a great many things.
Did you say a great many things last night?

send a request for sth.

I sent a request for some paper 10 days ago.

in this way

...In this way, ...
I always have a good seat in the theatre.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'bɛgə/

beggar n.

1 get sth. for sb. L5

2 Can we get some food for that beggar?

3 find n. adj. L4

4 I find that beggar interesting.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

food n.

1 v.怎么找?

2 He spoilt all the food.

3 Did he spoil all the food?

4 How did he spoil all the food?

/'pɒkɪt/

pocket n.

1 6123456

2 There is some money in my pocket.

3 The money is in my pocket.

4 My pocket is too small.

5 pocket money

call v.

1 call at: to stop at (a place) briefly VS visit ?

2 [Story]: He calls at every house in the street once a month.

3 Does he call at every house in the street once a month?

4 who/how often/why

- pocket money

- call at=visit

Grammar

a/an/the/some/any + n.

a/an/the

some/any

a pen

some 偏肯 any 偏否

an apple

There is a pen on the table.

The pen is Leo's.

I'm not a big fat panda.

I'm the big fat panda.

功夫熊猫

Kung Fu Panda (2008)

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
4. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study-Test Learning Pyramid
5. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

6 Story+Expressions

- move to sw.
- knock at the door
- ask sb. for sth.
- stand on sb's head
- call at
- in return for this
- once a st.
- ask for sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

move to sw.

do/does: He always moves to Hainan every winter. did: He moved to Hainan last winter.

have done: He has just moved to Hainan. am/is/are doing: He is moving to Hainan next month.

knock at the door

Someone is knocking at the door.
Is someone knocking at the door?
Who is knocking at the door?

ask sb. for sth.

L1117

When I was young, I always asked my mom for pocket money.

I have just asked my brother for some food.

in return for this

In return for this, I made that decision.
I am going to give him some money every year. The farmer gave us food in return for our work.

stand on sb's head

Look, he is standing on his head.
Why is standing on his head?

call at

[Story]: He calls at every house in the street once a month.

once a st.

Once a year, my brother sends a postcard to me. Does your brother send you a postcard once a year?
How often does your brother send you a postcard?

ask for sth.

Can I ask for some water?
Don't give him more pocket money.
He's just asked for some from me.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/dɪ'tektɪv/
detective n.

- 1 v./expression
- 2 go to the theatre L1
- 3 have breakfast L2
- 4 think about sth./sb. L3
- 5 work for sb. L4
- 6 get sth. for sb. L5
- 7 knock at the door L6

/'eəpɔ:t/
airport n.

- 1 think about sth./sb. L3 once a st. L6
- 2 I think about Beijing Daxing International Airport almost once a week.
- 3 Why do you think about that airport?
- 4 find n. adj. L4
- 5 I find this airport very cool.

/ɪk'spekt/
expect v.

- 1 [Story]: They were expecting a valuable parcel.
- 2 Were they expecting a valuable parcel?
- 3 Why were they expecting a valuable parcel?

/'væljuebəl/ /'daɪəmənd/
valuable adj. diamond n.

- 1 receive sth. from sb.
- 2 Ross received this valuable diamond from Carl.
- 3 Did Ross receive this valuable diamond from Carl?

/'pɑ:səl/
parcel n.

- 1 ask for sth. L6
- 2 He asked for some parcels this morning.
- 3 Who asked for some parcels this morning?

/sti:l/ /stəʊl/ /'steələn/
steal-stole-stolen v.

- 1 He stole that valuable diamond.
- 2 Did he steal that valuable diamond?
- 3 How did he steal that valuable diamond?

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/meɪn/
main adj. + n.

- 1 main building + call at L6
- 2 This is the main building of UOA.
- 3 I called at the main building of UOA once a month.
- 4 main street

/'eəfi:lð/
airfield n.

- 1 on the airfield
- 2 turn round L1
- 3 He turned round and found his girlfriend on the airfield.

/gə:d/
guard n.

- 1 keep guard
- 2 He is keeping guard at the door.
- 3 body guard

/'prɛ:sɪ/ /steən/
precious adj. stone n.

- 1 in this way L5
- 2 In this way, he got all the precious stones.
- 3 How did he get all the precious stones?

/sænd/
sand n.

- 1 In return for my help, she sent some sand to me.

• **keep guard**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

7 Grammar

过去进行时
一个动作过去正在进行
am/is/are+doing
was/were+doing

过去进行时

was/were+doing

肯定句

He was sleeping this morning.

否定句

He was not sleeping this morning.

一般疑问句

Was he sleeping this morning?

过去进行时

用法1	一个动作过去正在进行 NCE1 L117	
结构 was/were + doing v.ing 现在分词	肯定	I was studying at 8 last night.
	否定	was/were + not
	一般疑问	was/were 提句首
	难点	was/were doing VS did when v.ing (现在分词)

when while as... 当/与...同时
as/when: did or was/were+doing
while: did or was/were+doing
was/were+doing 持续时间更长的动作

Someone knocked at the door when/while I was having lunch.

Did someone knock at the door when/while you were having lunch?

When did someone knock at the door?

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

7 Story+Expressions

- all morning
- a parcel of sth.
- A few hours earlier
- keep guard
- to sb.'s surprise
- try to do sth.
- A be full of B

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

all morning

all night/all day

I think about you all night.

a parcel of sth.

a parcel of diamonds + v.

He sent a request for a parcel of diamonds. L5

A few hours earlier

ask sb. for sth. L6

He asked his wife for some pocket money a few hours earlier.

try to do sth.

I tried to pay attention, but I couldn't bear it. L1

keep guard

He kept guard at the door for 2 hours last night.

to sb.'s surprise

To my surprise, he didn't get angry at all. L1

To their surprise, I moved to Beijing in 2012. L6

A be full of B

The house is full of people.

Is the house full of people?

Why is the house full of people?

They are having a party now.

编故事

I want to tell you a story. A few hours earlier, I received a parcel from my friend, Leo. To my surprise, the parcel was full of diamonds. I tried to pay attention to the diamonds all morning while the detectives were keeping guard at the door.

But, there was a young man and a young woman talking loudly upstairs...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习.
3. 编故事(30–50句话)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/kəm'pe:tɪʃən/

competition n.

- 1 I found that competition very interesting, but I don't now. L4
- 2 enter the competition
- 3 I entered the competition.
- 4 Did you enter the competition?
- 5 How did you enter the competition?
- 6 like+competition

/ni:t/

neat adj.

- 1 Her house is always neat and clean.
- 2 He always looks very neat and tidy.
- 3 That's neat/cool.

/pa:θ/

path n.

- 1 neat path
- 2 [Story]: He has made neat paths.
- 3 He made a neat path last month.
- 4 Did he make a neat path last month?

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'wʊdən/

wooden adj.

- 1 wooden chair/bridge/spoon/door + v./expression
- 2 His house is full of wooden chairs. L7
- 3 He knocked at the wooden door. L6
- 4 She always finds wooden things beautiful. L4
- 5 I had breakfast with a wooden spoon. L2

/pu:l/

pool n.

- 1 swimming pool
- 2 6123456
- 3 He has gone to the swimming pool. L4
- 4 There are a great many swimming pools in Beijing. L5

- swimming pool
- enter the competition
- make a path
- That's neat.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

8 Grammar

adj.比较级&最高级-构成

1. 单音节: +er/est

small → smaller → smallest
new → newer → newest
old → older → oldest

2. 单音节: 以e结尾 +r/st

large → larger → largest
nice → nicer → nicest

3. 单音节: 元+辅结尾, 双写辅音字母, 加er, est

big → bigger → biggest
hot → hotter → hottest
fat → fatter → fattest

4. 双音节: 辅音字母+y结尾的, 把y变为 i, 加er, est

pretty → prettier → prettiest
easy → easier → easiest
heavy → heavier → heaviest

补充:

famous → more famous → the most famous
clever → cleverer/more clever → cleverest/ the most clever

5. 不规则

good/well → better → best
bad → worse → worst
much /many → more → most
little → less → least

6. 多音节adj.(大于等于3), 前加more, most表肯定

beautiful
more beautiful
the most beautiful
intelligent
more intelligent
the most intelligent

7. 多音节adj.(大于等于3), 前加less, least表否定

beautiful
less beautiful
the least beautiful
expensive
less expensive
the least expensive

1. 主语+be+adj.er+than+比较对象(I formal/ me informal)

The left one is smaller than the right one.

Yao is taller than Jet Li.

The left one is prettier than the right one.

2. 主语+be+the+adj.est +n.+范围

我爸爸是全世界最酷(coolest)的人。

My father is the coolest guy in the world.

世上只有妈妈好(kindest)。

My mom is the kindest person in the world.

我的邻居是全世界最好(nicest)的人。

My neighbor is the nicest guy in the world.

3. 主语+be+the+adj.est+n.+I've ever met/seen

特蕾莎修女是我知道最善良的人。

Mother Teresa is the kindest woman I've ever known.

姚明是我见过最高的人。

Yao Ming is the tallest guy I've ever seen.

卓别林是我见过最有趣的人。

Charles Chaplin is the funniest guy I've ever seen.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法
4. 利用如下关键句型造句 3 X 10
 - 主语+be+the+adj.est+n. +I've ever met/seen
 - 主语+be+the+adj.est +n. +范围
 - 主语+be+adj.er+than+比较对象(I formal/ me informal)

8 Story+Expressions

- enter for
- make a path
- build a bridge
- win a prize.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

enter for

[Story]: Every year I enter for the garden competition.

Do you enter for the garden competition every year?

make a path

He made a path in his garden.
He is making a path in his garden.
He has made a path in his garden.
He was making a path in his garden.
He is going to make a path in his garden.

build a bridge

They built a bridge over the river last year.
Did they build a bridge over the river last year?
why/who/when/where

win a prize

He won a big prize last month.
Did he win a big prize last month?
How did he win a big prize last month?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

9 Words

胶囊助学计划

/'welkəm/

welcome n. v.

- 1 a cold welcome/ a warm welcome
2 welcome to China/Beijing/Auckland

/krəud/ /'gæðə/

crowd gather v.

- 1 a crowd of; gather round
2 [Story]: A large crowd of people had gathered under the town hall clock.

/hænd/

hand n.

- 1 minute hand; second hand; hour hand
2 try to do L7 + fix
3 They are trying to fix that big minute hand.
4 Why are they trying to fix that big minute hand?

/ʃaʊt/

shout v.

- 1 shout at sb. (This suggests that we're angry.)
2 shout to sb. (When we shout to someone, we want them to hear us. They might be on the other side of the street)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/rɪ'fju:z/

refuse v.

- 1 refuse to do sth.
2 He refused to take the money.
3 Did he refuse to take the money?
4 Who refused to take the money?

/la:f/

laugh v.

- 1 The baby is laughing.
2 Is the baby laughing?
3 Why is the baby laughing?
4 laugh at sb.
5 Don't laugh at me, man!

- a cold welcome
- a warm welcome
- gather round
- shout at sb.
- refuse to do sth.
- laugh at sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

9 Grammar

on/in/at

on+具体某一天

Goodbye! See you on Friday.
I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.
The concert is on 22 November.

at + 时间点

I start work at 8 o'clock.
The shops close at 5:30.
At midnight, they were still studying.

in+年/季/月

I'm going on holiday in October.
Emma left school in 1993.
The garden is lovely in spring.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

9 Story+Expressions

- the last day of the year
- a large crowd of
- in twenty minutes' time
- refused to do sth.
- at that moment
- begin to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

the last day of the year/month

She is going to fly to New York on the last day of this month. L4

a (large) crowd of

a crowd of (adj.: angry) detectives/waiters/actors/beggars

A large crowd of detectives gathered at the airport.

in twenty minutes' time

6123456

in six months/in a few minutes

To our surprise, he is moving to Beijing in six months. L2 L6 L7
Where is he moving to in six months?

refuse to do sth.

He refused to teach me math. L3

He has refused to think about that. L3

He refused to work for that big firm. L4

He refused to enter for the competition. L8

He refused to make a path for us. L7

at that moment

6123456

At that moment, he turned round. L1

Did he turn round at that moment?

begin to do sth.

While we were having breakfast, it began to rain. L2 L7

Did it begin to rain while you were having breakfast?

When did it begin to rain?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

10 Words

胶囊助学计划

/dʒæz/

jazz n.

- 1 This is Louis Armstrong.
- 2 He began to play jazz when he was very young. L9
- 3 listen to jazz
- 4 He listens to jazz almost every day.

/'mju:zɪkəl/

/'ɪnstrəmənt/

musical adj. instrument n.

- 1 My parents got all these musical instruments for me many years ago. L5
- 2 He refused to lend me his musical instruments. L3 L9

/'klævɪkɔ:rð/

clavichord n.

- 1 Listen, someone is playing the clavichord.
- 2 While I was doing my homework, my sister was playing the clavichord. L7
- 3 This is the most beautiful clavichord I've ever seen. L8

/'dæmɪdʒ/ /'rɪsəntli/

damage v. recently adv.

- 1 Recently, a visitor damaged the clavichord.
- 2 Did a visitor damage the clavichord?
- 3 how/who/when/what

/ki:/

key n.

- 1 I've just sent a request for some keys. L5
- 2 He refused to repair the keys for me. L9

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/strɪŋ/

string n.

- 1 This is the best string I've ever used. L8
- 2 This string is better than that one. L8

/ʃɒk/

shock v. shocked adj.

- 1 [Story]: This shocked my father.
- 2 Did this shock your father?

/ə'lɔ:ʊ/

allow v.

- 1 be allowed to do sth.
- 2 allow sb. to do sth.
- 3 My parents allowed me to watch TV every Friday when I was young. L7

/tʌtʃ/

touch v.

- 1 Don't touch me/that!
 - 2 We are not allowed to touch anything in the museums.
 - 3 Why aren't we allowed to touch anything in the museums?
- be allowed to do sth.
 - allow sb. to do sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

10 Grammar

被动-be+done

被动有时态吗?

昨天被打了。

天天都挨打。

刚刚被打了。

be 表时态

done 表被动

am/is/are+done

Somebody cleans the office everyday.

The office is cleaned everyday.

The office is not cleaned everyday.

Is the office cleaned everyday?

am/is/are+done

Stamps ____ in a post office. (sell)

was/were+done

They built this house in 1921.

This house was built in 1921 by them.

Was this house built in 1921?

This house was not built in 1921.

was/were+done

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday.

The office was cleaned yesterday.

was/were+done

I ____ to the party. (invite)

am/is/are+being+done

Somebody is painting the door.

The door is being painted.

Is the door being painted?

The door is not being painted.

am/is/are+being+done

They are building a bridge.

A bridge is being built.

am/is/are+being+done

My car is at the garage.

It _____. (repair)

am/is/are+being+done

We are building a new ring road round the city.

A new ring road ____ round the city.

am/is/are+being+done

Someone is using the computer at the moment.

The computer ____ at the moment.

have/has been done

This room looks nice, somebody has cleaned it. This room looks nice, It _____.

Has it been cleaned?

It hasn't been cleaned.

have/has been done

They have built a new hospital near the airport.

A new hospital ____ near the airport.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study-Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

10 Story+Expressions

- be made in sw.
- belong to sb.
- play jazz
- be allowed to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句指南	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

be made in sw.

The phone is made in China.
Is the phone made in China?
Where is the phone made?

belong to sb.

[Story]:It has belonged to our family for a long time. Has it belonged to your family for a long time?
How long has it belonged to your family?

play jazz

Listen, she is playing jazz.
She plays jazz every day.
She is playing jazz tonight.
She was playing jazz when the phone rang.

be (not) allowed to do sth.

Sir, you are not allowed to smoke on the plane.
You are allowed to use phone on the plane.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

11 Words

胶囊助学计划

/tɜːn/ /dɪ'zɜːv/ turn n. v. deserve v.

- 1 one good turn deserves another.
2 [变得] The sky turned black and it began to rain.
3 [次序] It's your turn.
4 You deserve that. [good & bad]

/'laʊər/

lawyer n.

- 1 A few days earlier, a lawyer knocked at my door. L7 L6
2 He wins a prize for the best lawyer in the town. L8

/bæŋk/

bank n.

- 1 He is working for a big bank at the moment. L4
2 The bank is cleaned every night after work. L10
3 The bank is being cleaned at the moment.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'sæləri/

salary n.

- 1 [Story]: He gets a good salary.
2 Does he get a good salary?
3 Who gets a good salary?
4 When I was young, my father got a very good salary. L7

/ɪ'mi:dɪətlɪ/

immediately adv. + v.

- 1 He began to play jazz immediately. L9 L10
2 Did he begin to play jazz immediately?

- one good turn deserves another.
- get a good salary
- It's your turn

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电电影段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

11 Story+Expressions

- get a good salary
- borrow sth. from sb.
- pay it back
- pay for sth.
- ask sb. to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

get a good salary

I got a good salary a few years earlier. L7

Did you get a good salary a few years earlier?

Why did you get a good salary a few years earlier?

borrow sth. from sb.

I borrowed some musical instruments from that friendly waiter. L10 L3

Did you borrow anything from that detective?

ask sb. to do sth.

My grandfather asked me to play jazz yesterday. L10

My father asked me to stand on my head yesterday. L6

My girlfriend lent me some money and asked me to pay it back a few days earlier. L3 L11

My best friend asked me to send a postcard to him last month. L3

pay it back

I gave him some money, and asked him to never pay it back. L11

Don't pay it back.

pay for sth.

The dinner was paid for by someone.

We can pay for this.

How can we pay for this?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/lʌk/

luck n.

- 1 good luck
 2 lucky adj. unlucky adj.
 3 lucky dog

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/kæptən/

captain n.

- 1 The captain has just asked me to help him. L11
 2 I borrowed some money from our captain and he told me not to pay it back. L11

/prɔ:d/
proud

- 1 be proud of
 2 The captain is very proud of me.
 3 I won a prize for the best lawyer in New York and my parents are very proud of me. L8

/seɪl/

sail v.

- 1 [Story]: Charles Alison will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow.
 2 Will Charles Alison sail from Portsmouth tomorrow?
 3 When will Charles Alison sail from Portsmouth?

/ɪm'pɔ:tənt/
important adj. + n.

- 1 I got a very important question to ask you.
 2 Last night, I made a very important decision. L3
 3 I find this message very important. L4
 4 Why do you find this message very important?

/ 'ha:bə /

harbour n. harbor

- 1 6123456
 2 This harbour was built many years ago.
 3 They built this harbour many years ago.
 4 I met your mom at the harbour many years ago.

- **lucky dog**
- **be proud of**
- **I got a very important question to ask you.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

12 Grammar

一般将来时: will–shall

含义: 将 / 会

肯定句

主+ will + do + 其他

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

I'll / She'll / We'll ...

一般将来时: will–shall

含义: 将 / 会 (当机立断的决定) 肯定句

主+ will + do + 其他 It's too heavy.

I'll carry it for you.

一般将来时: will–shall

含义: 将 / 会 一般疑问句

Will + 主 + do ...?

Will you help me?

一般将来时: will–shall

含义: 将 / 会 否定句

主+will + not (won't)

I'm sorry I was late this morning.

It won't happen again.

一般将来时: will–shall

肯定句

I/We+ shall + do + 其他

否定句

I/We+ shall + not(shan't) /ʃənt/

一般疑问句

Shall + I/we ...

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

12 Story+Expressions

- sail from sw.
- set out
- have plenty of time
- will be away
- A be proud of B
- say goodbye to sb.
- take part in

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

sail from sw.

[Story]: Charles Alison will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow.
Will he sail from Portsmouth tomorrow?
who/when/where/why

set out

I will set out at 8, and fly to Auckland. L4
When will we set out?

have plenty of time

We'll have plenty of time and we'll spend three days in Beijing. L3

say goodbye to sb.

Come here and say goodbye to your aunt.
My parents asked me to say goodbye to him. L11

will be away

[Story]: He will be away for two months.
Will he be away for two months?
How long will he be away?
Who will be away for two months?
Why will he be away for two months?

A be proud of B

I am proud of you.
My parents are proud of me.

take part in

He refused to take part in the race. L9
Did he refuse to take part in the race?
Why did he refuse to take part in the race?
“China is preparing to take part in the Moscow Olympic Games.” Deng Xiaoping 1979

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

13 Words

胶囊助学计划

/gru:p/

group n.

- 1 a group of students/waiters/captains
- 2 Look, a group of students are playing jazz there. L10
- 3 A group of detectives are keeping guard at the door. L7
- 4 A group of captains will spend three days here. L3

/pop/ /'singə/

pop singer n.

- 1 pop music/song/star
- 2 The famous pop singer moved to our street yesterday. L6
- 3 Did the famous pop singer move to your street yesterday?
- 4 why/when/where/who

/klʌb/

club n. + v.

- 1 night club / tennis club
- 2 join v.
I've just joined the tennis club.
- 3 She refused to go to the night club with him. L9
- 4 This night club has been cleaned. L10
is cleaned / was cleaned / is being clean

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/pe'fɔ:məns/

performance n.

- 1 give a performance
- 2 They are giving a performance.
- 3 They give a performance every weekend.
- 4 They were giving a performance while the police came in.

/ə'keɪʒən/

occasion n. occasionally adv.

- 1 on this occasion
- 2 On this occasion, I always get very angry. L1
- 3 They only meet occasionally.

- a group of
- pop music/song/star
- give a performance
- on this occasion

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

13 Grammar

将来进行时		
用法1	未来动作正在进行	
结构 will be doing	肯定	Don't call me after 10. I will be sleeping.
	否定	will+not=won't
	一般疑问	will 提句首
	难点	现在/过去/将来进行时

At 10 o'clock yesterday, Tina was in her office. She was working.
It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working.
At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working.

将来进行时		
用法2	计划	
结构 will be doing	肯定	I will be meeting him tomorrow.
	否定	will+not=won't
	一般疑问	will 提句首
	难点	will be doing am/is/are doing am/is/are going to do

will be doing

同

He is taking a test next week.

He will be taking a test next week.

He is going to take a test next week.

异

am/is/are doing 表将来最好+未来时间

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书（中级）通过目录或索引（Index）查找到本课语法

13 Story+Expressions

- a group of
- at present
- all parts of the country
- as usual
- have a difficult time
- give five performances
- keep order
- on these occasions

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

a group of

A group of pop singers will be arriving here tomorrow.
Will a group of pop singers be arriving here tomorrow?
who/when

at present

At present, a large crowd of people is gathering in front of the theatre. L9
At present, two detectives is keeping guard at the door. L7

all parts of the country

all parts of China/Beijing/our town/school
We'll have plenty of time and travel all parts of China. L12
why...

as usual

As usual, the room is being cleaned by two people. L10
As usual, we will set out at 6 in the morning. L12

have a difficult time

I'm having a difficult time these days, but it'll pass. L2
I had a very difficult time last year. L3

keep order

[Story]: They will be trying to keep order.
Will they be trying to keep order?
how/why/who...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ə'mju:zɪŋ/
amusing adj.

- 1 I find it amusing.
2 He took part in an amusing car race last year. L12
3 She will be taking part in an amusing car race next week. L13

/ɪk'spiəriəns/
experience n.

- 1 amusing experience
2 have an amusing experience
3 [Story]: I had an amusing experience last year.
4 did / who / when

/weɪv/
wave v.

- 1 wave to sb.
2 Look, she is waving to you. Do you know her?
3 Is she waving to me? I don't know her.
4 Why is she waving to me?

/lift/ /'hitʃhaɪk/
lift n. hitchhike

- 1 to get free rides in other people's cars by waiting next to the road
2 take a lift / ask for a lift
3 A give B a lift
4 She gave me a lift.
5 Did she give you a lift?
6 why

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/rɪ'plaɪ/
reply v.

- 1 reply to the email/letter
2 She replied to my letter yesterday.
3 Did she reply to your letter yesterday?
4 who/why/when

/'læŋgwɪdʒ/
language n.

- 1 native language / mother tongue
2 What is your native language?

/'dʒɜ:nɪ/
journey n.

- 1 go on a journey
2 We'll be going on a journey next week.
3 We went on a journey yesterday.
4 We're going on a journey tomorrow.

- **have an amusing experience**
- **wave to sb.**
- **take a lift / ask for a lift**
- **A give B a lift**
- **reply to the email/letter**
- **go on a journey**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

14 Grammar

过去完成时		
用法1	过去的过去 NCE1119	
结构 had+done v.ed done 过去分词	肯定	When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.
	否定	had + not
	一般疑问	had 提句首
	难点	判断动作前后顺序且均在过去 v.ed(done 过去分词)

过去完成时		
用法2	过去A点发生，对过去B点产生了影响 (have done的过去时)	
结构 had+done	肯定	We weren't hungry. We had just had lunch.
	否定	had + not
	一般疑问	had 提句首
	难点	had done VS have done v.ed(done 过去分词)

过去完成时		
用法3	一个动作从过去A持续或重复到过去B (have done的过去时)	
结构 had+done	肯定	By 2020, I had lived in Beijing for 9 years.
	否定	had + not
	一般疑问	had 提句首
	难点	had done VS have done v.ed(done 过去分词)

homework

- 1 Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
- 2 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
- 3 尝试翻阅红皮书（中级）通过目录或索引（Index）查找到本课语法

14 Story+Expressions

- drive on to sw.
- on the way
- ask sb. for a lift
- apart from
- in French(语言)

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

drive on to sw.

Drive on, we don't have time to stop.
After that, we drove on to Beijing.

on the way

We'll have plenty of time and we can talk about that on the way home. L12
We'll be having a difficult time on the way there. L13

ask sb. for a lift / ask for a lift / give sb. a lift

We can ask someone for a lift.
I am not allowed to ask for a lift. L10
To my surprise, he asked for a lift. L7

apart from

Apart from this watch, they are all made in China. L10
Apart from jazz, I also listen to country music.

in French(语言)

I will try to say that in French. L7
How do you say "I will be away for two weeks" in Chinese? L12
It is written in French, and I don't speak it. L10

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'sek'retəri/***secretary n.**

- 1 As soon as the secretary had entered the room, the boss waved to her. L14
 2 After the secretary had got off the car, she drove on to the next meeting.
 3 Before the secretary tried to pay for the dinner, he had already done that. L11

*/'nɜ:s:vəs/***nervous adj.**

- 1 be nervous about sth. / doing sth.
 2 He is nervous about the exam.
 3 She is nervous about asking for a lift. L14
 4 Are you nervous about going on a journey alone? L14

*/e:fɔ:d/***afford v.**

- 1 afford sth.
 2 The book is too expensive. I can't afford it.
 3 Can we afford that?
 4 can't afford to pay sth.
 5 We can't afford to pay that car right now.

*/wɪ:k/***weak adj.**

- 1 You are so weak.
 2 I feel weak. I think I'm ill.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/intə'ræpt/***interrupt v.**

- 1 I'm replying a letter. Don't interrupt me please.
 2 Sorry to interrupt, but ... Can I play jazz here? L10
 That girl is waving to us. Maybe she needs help. L14
 You're not allowed to smoke here. L10

*/ek'strəʊl/***extra**

- 1 I could use some extra sleep/time/money/hand/help.

- be nervous about sth. / doing sth.
- afford sth.
- Sorry to interrupt, but ...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

15 Grammar

宾语从句

I believe you.

I believe (that) you are right.

一个句子做宾语，这个句子叫宾语从句

NCE1 L99–102; L133–136

宾语从句

I think that we'll have plenty of time. L12

I think that he'll never pay it back. L11

I believe that they will set out tomorrow. L12

He said that our teacher refused to help us. L9

She told me that a famous pop singer moved to our street. L6

直接引语 — 间接引语

直接引语: “I am busy”, he said.

间接引语: He said that he was busy.

间接引语: He says that he is busy.

注意:

1.人称变化

2.从句时态变化

3. 添加连词(宾从连词 that)

直接引语: “I never work on Sundays”, she said.

间接引语: She said that she never worked on Sundays.

间接引语: She says that she never works on Sundays.

直接引语 — 间接引语

从句时态变化

am/is/are — was/were

am/is/are doing — was/were doing

does/do — did

have/has done — had done

did — had done

直接引语 — 间接引语

从句情态动词变化

can—could

may—might

will—would

shall—should

must—had to

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

15 Story+Expressions

- look up
- afford to pay
- my turn had come
- in a weak voice

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

afford to pay

He gets a good salary, but still he can't afford to pay such an expensive car. L11

Can we afford to pay this?

my turn had come

It's my turn.

in a weak voice

“Please help me”, she said in a weak voice.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/pɑ:k/***park v.**

- 1 You can't park your car here, sir.
- 2 Where can I park my car?
- 3 Is there a parking lot near here, sir?
- 4 Look, we are not allowed to park here. L10
- 5 I had an amusing experience last year while I was parking my car. L14 L7

*/'træfɪk/***traffic n.**

- 1 traffic police/lights
- 2 Our son is a traffic police and we are proud of him. L12
- 3 Those traffic lights have been broken by three kids. L10
- 4 We are late because there was heavy traffic.

*/'tɪkɪt/***ticket**

- 1 traffic ticket
- 2 Don't park here. You'll get a ticket for that.
- 3 The traffic waved to me and asked me to stop, and then he gave me a ticket. L14 L11
- 4 I can't afford to pay so many traffic tickets. L15

*/nəʊt/***note n.**

- 1 make notes/ make a note
- 2 I believe you will all make notes in my class. L15
- 3 leave a note

*/'eəriə/ /saɪn/***area n. sign n.**

- 1 [Story]: This is a "No Parking" area.
- 2 Is this a "No Parking" area?
- 3 Why is this a "No Parking" area?
- 4 Can you read that sign?
- 5 Look at that sign.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

*/rɪ'maɪndər/***reminder n.**

- 1 [Story]: This note is only a reminder.
- 2 remind sb. of sth./sb.
- 3 He reminds me of my father.
- 4 Does he remind you of your father?
- 5 Who does he remind you of?

*/feɪl/***fail v.**

- 1 fail to do sth.
- 2 He failed to pay it back. L11
- 3 She failed to borrow the car from her neighbour. L11

*/əʊ'bey/***obey v.**

- 1 We must obey the traffic rules.
- 2 He refused to obey that stupid rule. L9
- 3 Why did he refuse to obey that rule?

- parking lot
- heavy traffic police/lights/jam
- make notes/ make a note
- leave a note
- remind sb. of sth./sb.
- fail to do sth.

homework

-
1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段、直到能 听出关键短语/句子
-

16 Grammar

if 引导的条件从句

Shall we go by bus or taxi?

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

We will get there more quickly if we go by taxi.

If we go there by bus, it will be cheaper.

It will be cheaper if we go by bus.

If从句可前可后。

主将从现

If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.

You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.

If he is out, I'll call tomorrow.

I'll call tomorrow if he is out.

主将从现

If you give us 20 minutes, we will give you 10 years back.

If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

主情从现

If you need money, I can lend you some.

主祈从现

If you don't like it, don't eat it.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

16 Story+Expressions

- park sb's car
- pay attention to

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

park sb's car

She parked her car in front of the theater last night. Did she park her car in front of the theater last night?
why/who/when/where...

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ə'piər/***appear v.**

- 1 [Story]: She often appears on the stage.
 2 Does she often appear on the stage?
 3 Who often appears on the stage?

*/steɪdʒ/***stage n.**

- 1 on the stage 6123456
 2 A group of pop singer are giving a performance on the stage. L13
 3 The stage is being cleaned right now. L10
 4 As soon as they had cleaned the stage, the actors appeared on it. L14

*/brɪt/***bright adj. + color + n.**

- 1 She's wearing a bright red dress. I find her very attractive. L4
 2 If you park your car in the wrong area, you'll find a bright yellow ticket on your car soon. L16
 3 This bright green skirt is the most beautiful one I've ever bought. L8

*/'stɒkɪŋ/***stocking n.**

- 1 My girlfriend asked me to buy some stockings for her online. L11
 2 He told me that I looked nice in long black stockings. L15

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/sɒk/***sock n.**

- 1 I will leave a note, and ask him to wash his socks. It smells terrible. L16
 2 Oh my GOD, these blue cheese remind me of my boyfriend's socks. L16
 3 I have just received some socks from my mom. L4

grown-up

- 1 "I'm scared, Dad." "Yes, I know, and sometimes grown-ups get scared and worried too, you know."
 2 I don't want to sit with the grown-ups. I want to go and play with the other kids.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

17 Grammar

情态动词	用法	基本用法	
		Present Future	Past
must 必须	表必须	I must do it.	I had to do it.
	否定 表禁止	You must not open that door. Don't open that door. You can't open that door. You'd better not open that door.	
	一般 must 提句首	大多数情况用have to	

情态动词	用法	基本用法	
		Present Future	Past
have to 比must 更常见	肯定 表必须	I have to go to class today.	I had to go to class yesterday.
	否定 表不必	I don't have to go to class today.	I didn't have to go to class yesterday.
	一般 比must 更常见	Do you have to leave?	Did you have to leave last night?

情态动词	用法	基本用法	
		Present Future	Past
have to VS must	主观 个人感受	I must do some more work. I must stop smoking.	
	客观 外界情况	I have to work from 9 to 5. I have to stop smoking.	
	美式	全用have to即可	

情态动词	用法	基本用法	
		Present Future	Past
have got to 口语	表必须	I have got to go to class today. (I've gotta go) (I gotta go)	I had to go to class yesterday.
一般		Do you have to go?	

对现在很确信的肯定推测。“一定是”
must do
must be adj./n.
must be doing

对现在很确信的否定推测。“一定不是”
can't do
can't be adj./n.
can't be doing

The restaurant _____ very good.
It's always full of people.
The restaurant _____ very good.
It's always empty.

What are you doing?
Don't tell me, let me guess.
You _____.(read)
You _____. (watch TV)

He must drink a lot of milk.

对过去很确信的肯定推测。“当时一定是”
must have done
must have been adj./n.
must have been doing

对过去很确信的否定推测。“当时一定不是”
can't have done
can't have been adj./n.
can't have been doing

George is outside his friends' house.
He has rung the doorbell three times
but nobody has answered.
They _____ out.(go)

Jay walked pass me without speaking.
She _____ me.(see)
The phone rang but I didn't hear it.
I _____ asleep.

Why didn't he answer the phone?
He must have been sleeping.
He can't have been watching TV.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

17 Story+Expressions

- at least
- In spite of this
- take part in
- it must be terrible to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

at least

At least, let me park my car here. L16
At least, I believe he will have a difficult time. L13 L15

At least, they will be giving five performances. L13

At least, I think he can't have borrowed any money from you. L17 L11

In spite of this

In spite of this, he replied to my email. L14

In spite of this, they went on a journey. L14

In spite of this, we still can't afford to pay that. L15

take part in

[Story]: Jennifer will have to take part in a new play soon.
Will Jennifer have to take part in a new play soon?
how soon/who/why...

It must be terrible to do sth.

It must be terrible to take a lift from a stranger. L14
It must be terrible to keep order on these occasions. L13
It must be terrible to make that decision on the last day. L3

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/pʌb/
pub n.

- 1 6123456
2 He must be drinking in that pub. L17
3 That pub was built in 1984. L10
4 They built this pub years ago.
5 Don't park your car in front of the pub. L16

/lændlɔ:d/
landlord n.

- 1 The landlord can't be sleeping now. L17
2 The landlord can't have been your friend. L17
3 If the landlord come in, you can just tell him that you are my friend. L16 L15
4 As soon as the landlord had left, they began to have a party. L9 L14
5 It must be terrible to live with your landlord. L17

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/bɪl/
bill n.

- 1 pay the bill
2 The bill has already been paid. L10
3 Leo must have paid the bill. L17
4 If you fail to pay the bill, I will remind you of it. L16
- **pay the bill**

Grammar

have

- have – has – having – had – had
have + done L4
had + done L14
have to L17
have got NCE1 L79
have 吃喝玩乐等 NCE1 L81

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
4. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
5. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引 (Index) 查找到本课语法

18 Story+Expressions

- look for
- have a good meal
- pay the bill
- in a few minutes

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

look for

In spite of the rain, we looked for our dog on the street for 4 hours. L17

If you don't pay attention to my note on the door, you will look for the key. L16

have a good meal

Do you want to have a meal with us?

I will be having a meal with them tonight. L13

After they had a great meal, they drove on to the next town. L14

pay the bill

I believe he have paid the bill. L15

If you pay the bill, I can pay next one. L16

She must have paid the bill for us. L17

She can't have paid the bill for us. L17

in a few minutes

In a few minutes, he will have to say goodbye to everyone. L12

In a few minutes, someone will knock at the door. L6

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'hʌri/
hurry v.

- 1 hurry to sw.
 2 Why did she leave her phone?
 She must have hurried to school. L17
 3 She can't have hurried to school
 yesterday. L17

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

ticket office

- 1 6123456
 2 The ticket office has just been cleaned. L10
 3 They must be cleaning that ticket office. L17
 4 They must sell coffee in that ticket office. L17

/'piti/
pity n.

- 1 What a pity!
 2 It's a pity that ...
 we can't afford that. L15
 he didn't pay any attention. L1
 he didn't reply to the letter. L14
 you'll be away for two months. L12

return v. n.

- 1 Can I return these tickets?
 2 I want to return these socks.
 3 They must have returned the musical
 instrument. L17

/'sædli/
sadly adv.

- 1 Sadly, I couldn't afford to pay it. L15
 2 Sadly, she must have gone home. L17
 3 Sadly, he won't take part in the new play. L17

/ɪk'skleɪm/
exclaim v.

- 1 to say or shout something suddenly because
 of surprise, fear, pleasure,
 2 "You can't do that!" she suddenly exclaimed.
 3 Don't yell at me.

- **hurry to sw.**
- **in a hurry**
- **What a pity!**
- **It's a pity that ...**
- **Don't yell at me.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

19 Grammar

may / might 表现在推测
对现在不确信的肯定(否定)推测。

“也许是”(也许不是)

may/might (not) do

may/might (not) be adj./n.

may/might (not) be doing

You are looking for Bob.

Nobody is sure where he is but you get some suggestions.

You: Where's Bob?

He may be in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office)

You are looking for Bob.

Nobody is sure where he is but you get some suggestions.

You: Where's Bob?

He might be having lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch)

You are looking for Bob.

Nobody is sure where he is but you get some suggestions.

You: Where's Bob?

Ask Ann. She might know. (= perhaps she knows)

(It's possible that I won't have time to meet you)

I might not have time to meet you.

may / might 表现在推测
对过去不确信的肯定(否定)推测。
“当时也许是”(当时也许不是)
may/might (not) have done.
may/might (not) have been adj./n.
may/might (not) have been doing.

A: I wonder why Kay didn't answer the phone.

B: She may have been asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)

A: I can't find my bag anywhere.

B: You might have left it in the shop.
(= perhaps you left it in the shop)

A: I wonder why Colin was in such a bad mood yesterday.

B: He may not have been feeling well.
(= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引 (Index) 查找到本课语法

19 Story+Expressions

- sold out
- at once
- might as well

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

at once immediately

After you told him that, he paid it back at once. L11

If you park your car in the wrong place, the traffic police will give you a ticket at once. L16

might/may as well

suggest that one should do sth.

Because there is nothing better, nothing more interesting or nothing more useful to do.

If no one wants it, we might as well give it to him. L16

I might as well take part in the new play. L17

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/kætʃ/ /kɔ:tʃ/

catch - caught - caught v.

- 1 The police have caught the thief.
- 2 The thief has been caught by the police. L10
- 3 Did you catch anything?
- 4 You can catch a bus if there is no taxi. L16

/'fɪʃəmən/

fisherman n.

- 1 The fisherman has to get up very early in the morning. L17
- 2 “It must be terrible to be a fisherman” said the little girl in a weak voice. L15 L17
- 3 As soon as the fisherman had got off the boat, it began to rain. L14

/bu:t/

boot n.

- 1 a pair of boots
- 2 She can't have cleaned her boots. L17
- 3 She must be cleaning the boots. L17
- 4 I can't afford to pay that boots. L15
- 5 I will be buying a new pair of boots. L13
- 6 You might as well wear these boots. L19

/'rʌbɪʃ/

rubbish n.

- 1 They must have thrown away all the rubbish.
- 2 nonsense=rubbish
- 3 That's rubbish.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/wɛst/

waste n. v.

- 1 It's a waste of time/money.
- 2 You're wasting time.
- 3 We may be wasting our time. L19

/'riəlaɪz/

realize v.

- 1 sb. realized that ...
- 2 He realized that she had paid the bill. L18
- 3 She realized that they had gone on a journey. L14
- 4 They realized that Leo might be sleeping. L19

- catch your eye

- catch a bus

- watch your tongue

- That's rubbish.

- You're wasting time.

- sb. realized that ...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

20 Grammar

动名词

构成: v.+ing

动词变成名词

I like fishing. 动名词

She is fishing. 现在分词

动名词 – 主语

Sleeping is good for you.

Reading is an art.

Fishing makes me happy.

Seeing is believing.

动名词 – 宾语/表语

I like sleeping.

I enjoy watching TV.

I love reading.

His hobby is collecting stamps.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

20 Story+Expressions

- instead of doing sth.
- spend st. sw.
- give up doing sth.
- be interested in doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

instead of doing sth.

Instead of asking for a lift, she caught a bus. L14

Instead of replying the letter, he visited us. L14

Instead of leaving a note, she wrote me a email. L16

spend st. sw.

I spent almost 3 years in Auckland.
They spent the whole summer on the beach.

He spent all week in his room, and played jazz. L10

give up doing sth.

They've already given up keeping order. L13

She must give up looking for a better job. L18

Why must she give up looking for a better job?

be interested in doing sth.

She is not interested in taking part in that new play. L17

I'm not interested in going on a journey alone. L14

They are interested in building a bridge in their garden. L8

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

mad adj.

- 1 be mad at sb.
 2 He is mad at me.
 3 Is he mad at you?
 4 Why is he mad at you?

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

reason n.

- 1 for some reason, ...
 2 For some reason, he hurried to the hospital. L19
 3 For some reason, she is keen on fishing. L20
 4 For some reason, you remind me of my father. L16

determined adj.

- 1 be determined to do sth.
 2 He is determined to go to the theatre. L1
 3 She is determined to teach me English. L3
 4 They are determined to take part in the new play. L12

sum n.

- 1 a large sum of money
 2 A large sum of money was stolen last night. L10
 3 He must have paid a large sum of money. L17
 4 He borrowed a large sum of money from me. L11

- **be mad at sb.**
- **for some reason**
- **a large sum of money**
- **be determined to do sth.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

21 Grammar

情态动词的被动

will/would be done

can/could be done

must be done

have to be done

当时一定是被...

must have done + be done

must have been done

My watch must have been stolen.

This room must have been cleaned.

This bridge must have been built years ago.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引 (Index) 查找到本课语法

21 Story+Expressions

- drive sb. mad
- for some reason
- come into use

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

drive sb. mad

I gave up learning English years ago, because it drove me mad. L20

Don't yell at me. You are driving me mad. L19

for some reason

For some reason, instead of spending the whole weekend in the house, he went on a journey by himself. L14 L20

For some reason, he gave up smoking. L20

come into use

[Story]: Last year, it came into use. Did it come into use last year? when/why...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

22 Grammar

v. + of/from/in/on...
dream of doing sth.
receive sth. from sb.
be interested in doing sth.
be keen on doing sth.
pp. 97

Words

/drɪ:m/

dream v.

- 1 dream of doing sth.
2 I dreamed of flying to New York a lot. L4
3 She dreamed of taking part in the new play. L12
4 He dreamed of going on a journey alone. L14

/eɪdʒ/

age n.

- 1 at my age...
2 At my age, I don't like to take a lift/ask for a lift. L14
3 At your age, you could get angry easily. L1
4 At my father's age, he gets up very early. L2

/'tʃænəl/

channel n.

- 1 across the channel
2 She swam across the channel last year.
3 Did she swim across the channel last year?
4 how/why/who/when...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456
/θ्रəʊ/ /θru:/ /θreʊn/		
throw - threw- thrown v.		
1 throw away 2 She has just thrown it away. 3 The book must have been thrown away. L21 4 Instead of throwing away the old clothes, she gave them to the poor people. L20		
regularly adv.		
1 exercise regularly 2 [Story]: Both girls write to each other regularly now. 3 Does both girls write to each other regularly now? 4 why/how often...		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dream of doing sth.• at my age• throw away		

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

22 Story+Expressions

- think of sth.
- write to sb.
- decide to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

think of sth.

She thinks of it everyday.

Does she think of it everyday?

why/who/how often...

write to sb.

She wrote to me a lot last summer.

Did she write to you a lot last summer?

why/when/who...

decide to do sth.

They can't have decided to pay the bill. L17 L18

She may have decided to catch a bus.

L19 L20

I decided to give a performance. L13

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/kəm'pli:t/
complete v.

- 1 The train station will be completed next year.
L21
2 When will the train station be completed?

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'mɔdn/
modern adj.

- 1 modern house/chair...
2 v. ?

/streɪndʒ/
strange adj.

- 1 This picture looks so strange.
2 Doesn't this picture look strange?
3 Why does this picture look so strange?

/'distrɪkt/
district n.

- 1 Haidian District
2 I lived in Haidian District.
3 Did you live in Haidian District?
4 why/who/when...
5 Where did you live?
• You complete me.

Story+Expressions

- have a letter from sb.
- get a surprise

习惯用法造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

have a letter from sb.

I had a letter from your father last year.
Did you receive a letter from my father last year? why/who/when...

get a surprise

I got a big surprise from my girlfriend last birthday. You will get a surprise when you get there. L7

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
3. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'mænɪdʒə/

manager n.

- 1 The manager realized that he know that guy. L20
- 2 That woman is driving our manager mad. L21
- 3 “I’m sorry” the manager said in a weak voice. L15

/ʌp'set/

upset adj.

- 1 get/be upset about sth.
- 2 The manager is upset about that girl.
- 3 Is the manager upset about that girl?
- 4 Why is the manager upset about that girl?

/sɪm'pæθɪtɪk/

sympathetic adj.

- 1 I lost my wallet, and my boyfriend was sympathetic, but there is nothing he can do about it.
- 2 We can be more sympathetic about this.

/kəm'pléɪn/ /'wɪkɪd/

complain v. wicked adj.

- 1 complain about sth.
- 2 She complains about the weather all the time.
- 3 Why does she complain about the weather all the time?
- 4 He is complaining about the wicked world.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/kən'teɪn/

contain v.

- 1 What is a container?
- 2 It contained 50.
- 3 Did it contain 50?
- 4 How much did it contain?

/'ɒnɪstɪ/

honesty n. honest adj.

- 1 [Story]: There is still some honesty in this world.
- 2 Is there any honesty in this world?

- get/be upset about sth.
- complain about sth.

Story+Expressions

- start to do sth.

start to do sth.

He started to yell at the manager.
L19

They started to play jazz on the street. L10

习惯用法
造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句

2. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

3. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'reɪlweɪ/***railway n.**

1 railway station

2 The railway station must have been built years ago. L21

3 The railway station was built years ago. L10

4 Instead of going to the railway station, she went home. L20

*/'pɔ:tə/ /'se'verəl/***porter n. several**

1 The porter complained about his job several times yesterday. L24

2 The porter will be meeting his girlfriend tonight. L13

3 The porter will have a difficult time. L13

*/'fɔ:rɪgnə/***foreigner n.**

1 There are foreigners from all parts of the world in Beijing. L13

2 She had an amusing experience with a foreigner last summer. L14

3 If you speak French, please talk to that foreigner. L16

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'wʌndə/***wonder v.**

1 no wonder

- **railway station**
- **no wonder**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

25 Grammar

并列连词conj.

1. and, but, or, so
2. both... and, either... or, neither... nor
3. not only... but also (as well)

并列连词conj.

1. and, but, or, so

同一主语情况下，主语不必重复

He finished lunch and (he) went into
the garden. Jim speaks French but his
wife speaks English.

并列连词conj.

2. both... and, either... or, neither... nor

Both Leo and his GF like to watch
movies.

Both my wife and I are going to Pairs.

连接主语 1

He can both sing and dance.

连接谓语 2

I can speak both English and German.

连接宾语 3

并列连词conj.

2. both... and, either... or, neither... nor

Either the teacher or the students
_____ wrong.

连接主语 1: v. 就近一致 (are)

When the girl is happy, she either
sings or dances.

连接谓语 2

I want either this red one or that green
one.

连接宾语 3

并列连词conj.

2. both... and, either... or, neither... nor

Neither dad nor mum ____ at home
today.

连结主语 1: v. 就近原则 (is)

When the boy is sad, he neither sings
nor dances.

连接谓语 2

I want neither this one nor that one.

连接宾语 3

并列连词conj.

not only... but also (as well)

不仅...而且...

Not only the doctor but also the
patients _____ know about it.
(do not)

连结主语 1: v. 就近原则 (don't)

You must not only wash the dishes
but sweep the floor as well. (= but
also sweep the floor.)

连接谓语 2

Shakespeare was not only a writer but
also an actor.

连接宾语 3

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引 (Index) 查找到本课语法

25 Story+Expressions

- not know the way to sw.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

not know the way to sw.

I don't know the way to the railway station.

Do you know the way to the railway station?

Why don't you know the way to the railway station?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

26 Words

胶囊助学计划

/ɑ:t/
art n.

- 1 Do you like art?
- 2 art student + v.
- Neither my sister nor my brother is an art student. L25
- 3 art museum + v.
- I don't know the way to the art museum. L25

/'krɪtɪk/ /'krɪtɪkəli/
critic n. critically adv.

- 1 The film critic complained about the movie. L24
- 2 She had a letter from a film critic. L23
- 3 You remind me of that music critic. L16
- 4 [Story]: She looked at it critically for a moment.
- 5 did/who/why/how long...

/peɪnt/
paint v.

- 1 The wall will be painted next week. L21
- 2 The house must be painted. L21
- 3 Instead of painting the whole room, he painted only one side. L20

/pri'tend/
pretend v.

- 1 sb. pretend that + 句子
- 2 She pretended that she was interested in fishing. L20
- 3 You always pretend that you pay attention to my words. L16

/'pætən/
pattern n.

- 1 pretty pattern n.+ v.
- 2 She may like this pretty pattern. L19
- 3 As soon as she saw the wall, she liked the pretty patterns on it. L14
- 4 We will be seeing some pretty patterns tonight. L13

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'kɔ:tən/
curtain n.

- 1 Can we afford to pay this curtain? L15
- 2 This is the most beautiful curtain I've ever seen. L8
- 3 While my husband was still sleeping, I got the curtain. L7

/mə'tɪəriəl/
material n.

- 1 listening material + v.
- 2 This listening material is harder than that one. L8
- 3 What material is this dress?

/ə'prɪ:fɪət/
appreciate v.

- 1 I really appreciate your help.

/'neɪtɪs/
notice v. n.

- 1 [Story]: They notice more.
- 2 Do they notice more?
- 3 why/who/how/what...
- 4 Both my parents and I didn't see that notice. L25

/'weðər/
whether conj.

/hæŋ/ /hʌŋ/
hang hung hung v.

- 1 My mom hung my picture on the wall.
- 2 did/who/why/where/when...
- 3 She is hanging the picture on the wall.

- sb. pretend that + 句子
- I really appreciate that.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/tent/
tent n.

- Neither Leo nor Jerry has a tent. L25
- This tent must be cleaned today. L21
- She can't have bought that tent 10 years ago. L17

/fi:ld/
field n. airfield

- There are a lot of farmers in the field.
- She started to complain about the worms in the field. L24
- Let's pretend that we are now in the field. L26

/smell/
smell - smelled - smelt v.

- It must be terrible to smell that everyday. L17
- My parents asked me to smell that tree last night. L11
- He refused to smell that. L9

/'wʌndəfəl/
wonderful adj.

- Great!
- Excellent!
- Outstanding!
- Brilliant!
- Fantastic!

/'kæmp faiə/
campfire n.

- He hurried to the campfire. L19
did/why/who...
- We didn't know the way to our campfire. L25

/kri:p / /krept/
creep crept v.

- My cat always creeps into my tent in the garden.
- does/why/what/how often...
- You crept on the carpet a lot when you are a baby. L7

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/'kʌmfəbl /
sleeping bag n. comfortable adj.

- She is keen on buying new sleeping bags. L20
- This sleeping bag has to be cleaned. L21
- This sleeping bag is the most comfortable one I've ever used. L8

/'saʊndlɪ/
soundly adv.

- sleep soundly
- That little girl is sleeping soundly in the bedroom now.
- I slept soundly last night.
- did/when/who...

/li:p /
leap - leapt - leapt v.

- [Story]: They all leapt out of their sleeping bags.
- did/who/why/where...

/'hevɪlɪ/
heavily adv.

- rain/snow heavily
- It's raining/heavy.
- It snowed/heavily last night.
- It must have rained/heavily last night. L17

/stri:m / /fɔ:m /
stream n. form v.

- Instead of drinking water in the bottle, she drank water from the stream. L20
- If you don't boil the stream water, something bad may happen. L16
- It rained/heavily last night, and a stream had formed in the field.

/wɪnd/ /wəʊnd/

wind - wound - wound v.

1 [Story]: The stream wound its way across the field.

2 did/how/where...

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/raɪt/

right adv.

1 The toilet is right in front of you.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

27 Story+Expressions

- put up the tent
- tell a story/stories
- put out the fire
- begin doing sth.
- wake up

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

put up the tent

They have already put up the tent.
The tent must have been put up by them. L21
Instead of putting up the tent, they went into the house. L20

tell a story/stories

She gave up telling stories for you. L20
Both my parents are keen on telling stories. L20
Can you tell a story now?

put out the fire

Don't worry. The fire will be put out. L21
As soon as they put out the fire, they crept into the tent. L14
I believe that she has already put out the fire. L15

wake up

I wake up at 8:00 every morning.
Do you wake up at 8:00 every morning?
when/why/who...

begin doing sth. = begin to do sth.

He began playing jazz. L10
She began complaining about her boyfriend. L24

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/rɪə(r)/***rare adj.**

- 1 rare animal
 2 The white tiger is rare.
 3 Why is the white tiger rare?
 4 To my surprise, I saw a rare white tiger yesterday in the field. L7

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'eɪnʃənt/***ancient adj.**

- 1 Rome has a lot of ancient buildings.
 does/why/where...
 2 Instead of visiting the modern buildings in Rome, they went to see the ancient ones. L20
 3 This ancient building must have been built thousands of years ago. L21
 4 ancient Egypt

*/mɪθ/***myth n.**

- 1 ancient myth
 2 When I was still a kid, my father told me stories about ancient myth. L7 L27
 3 You always pretend that you know every ancient myth. L26

*/'trʌbəl/***trouble n.**

- 1 have trouble with sth.
 2 When I was still in school, I always had trouble with math. L7
 3 I have trouble with my parents.
 4 have trouble doing sth.

*/ɪ'fekt/***effect n.**

- 1 have no effect
 2 This doesn't have any effect.
 3 Why doesn't this have any effect?

*/mɪ'dju:z/ /'gɔ:gən/***Medusa Gorgon**

- have trouble with sth.
- have no effect
- have trouble doing sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

28 Grammar

输出 定从	一句汉语变两句英文
	确定被修饰词
	确定who/whom/which/that
	确定是否可以省略 (替代宾语)
	who/whom/which/that替代被修饰词，并提句首
	定从紧随被修饰词之后

住在隔壁的男人是一个医生。

The man is a doctor.

He lives next door. (who lives next door)

The man who lives next door is a doctor.

whose引导的定从

We saw some people.

Their car had broken down.

We saw some people whose car had broken down.

我们认识许多住在伦敦的人。

We know a lot of people.

They live in London. (who live in London)

We know a lot of people who live in London.

whose引导的定从

I met a man.

His wife is an English teacher.

I met a man whose wife is a English teacher.

发生故障的那个机器已经被修理好了。

The machine has been repaired.

The machine broke down. (which broke down)

The machine which broke down has been repaired.

whose引导的定从

I met somebody.

His parents work in a bank.

I met somebody whose parents work in a bank.

我想见的那个女人去度假了。

The woman was away on holiday.

I wanted to see that woman. (who I wanted to see)

The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.

whose引导的定从

I met somebody.

Her mother writes stories.

I met somebody whose mother writes stories.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

29 Words

胶囊助学计划

/tæksi/
taxi n.

- 1 take a taxi
- 2 If you take a taxi there, then you don't have to get up so early. L16
- 3 It must be terrible to take a taxi in that city. L17
- 4 The taxi which you took last night broke down this morning. L28

/lænd/
land v.

- 1 landed in the field/airfield
- 2 The plane landed in the airfield an hour ago.
- 3 did/when/why/where...
- 4 The plane which has just landed in the field belongs to my family. L28

/pləʊθ/
plough v.

- 1 When they were ploughing the field, they saw a rare white tiger. L7
- 2 After the farmer had ploughed the field, they cooked a meal over an open fire. L27 L14
- 3 The farmer who had just ploughed the field is my father. L28

/'leənlɪ/
lonely adj.

- 1 When I was in Auckland, I sometimes felt lonely. L7
- 2 a lonely village
The man who grew up in a lonely village has lived in the big city for 10 years. L28
- They will be driving to a lonely village. L13

/wεlfɪ/ /wεlɪz/
Welsh adj. Wales

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/ru:fɪ/
roof n.

- 1 landed on the roof
- 2 The plane landed on the roof.
- 3 How did the plane land on the roof?
- 4 The man who is repairing the roof is my brother. L28
- 5 The children were telling stories on the roof earlier. L27

/flæt/ /e'pə:tment/ /blɒk/
flat n. apartment block n.

- 1 The man who owns ten flats in the city decided to go on trip by himself. L28 L22
- 2 This flat must have been cleaned last night. L21
- 3 It's a pity that she sold that apartment. L19
- 4 The museum is just six blocks away.

/'deɪzət/ /dɪ'zɜ:t/
desert n. desert v.

- 1 It has been deserted for some time. L10
- 2 Has it been deserted for some time?
- 3 How long has it been deserted?
- 4 Have you ever been to the desert?

• take a taxi

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

29 Grammar

done 做定语

The ‘taxi’ is a small Swiss airplane called a ‘Pilatus Porter’.
on a ploughed field
deserted car park

通常表被动一般/被动完成

a broken cup

= the cup that has been broken boiled water

= water that has been boiled

偶尔表示主动完成

fallen leaves = leaves that have fallen

a retired captain

= a captain who has retired a married man

= a man that has married

位置: 单词(done) + n. + done引导的短语

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

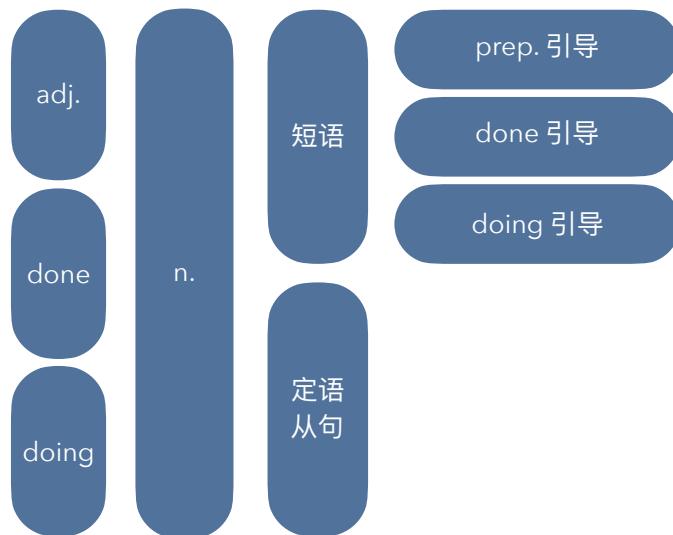
.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

30 Grammar

doing 现在分词做定语：主动进行/主动一般

the sinking ship=the ship that is sinking
the rising sun=the sun that is rising
the sleeping child=the child who is sleeping
I like the girl dancing with that guy.



*/pələʊ/***polo n.**

1 water polo

2 The man who likes to play water polo complains about the weather all the time. L28

3 Either his father or his grandfather plays water polo. L25

4 He decided to learn water polo last summer. L22

*/weɪl/***Wayle n.***/kʌt/***cut cut cut v.**

1 That river cuts across the park.

2 does/where...

3 Don't cut yourself.

4 He cut himself yesterday.

5 did/who/when...

*/rəʊ/***row v.**

1 When they were rowing on the river, it began to rain. L7

2 Where were they? I don't know. They may have been rowing on the river. L19

3 My brother is keen on rowing on the river. L20

*/kɪk/***kick v.**

1 [Story:] One of the children kicked a ball very hard.

2 did/who/why/how hard/when...

3 kick his ass

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/tə'wɔ:dz/***towards prep.**

1 They walked towards that park.

2 did/where/who...

3 When I got home last night, my son and my dog ran towards me. It feels so good.

*/'nɪəli/***nearly***/sə:t/***sight n.**

1 in sight / out of sight

2 No one is in sight.

3 Everyone is out of sight.

4 It's too late. There aren't any car in sight.

• kick his ass

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句

2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

30 Story+Expressions

- call out to sb.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

call out to sb.

He called out to that girl who sat on
the river bank.
did/who/why...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

31 Words

胶囊助学计划

/rɪ'taɪə/

retire v.

- 1 The man who retired last year likes walking with his wife along the river bank on fine afternoons. L28
- 2 The man rowing on the river has just retired. L30
- 3 The man putting up the tent retired last summer. L30

/'kʌmpəni/

company n.

- 1 He has worked for this business company for ten years. L4
- 2 When he was still working for that company, he liked walking in the park near his company. L7
- 3 This is the biggest company I've ever worked for. L8

/'baɪsɪkəl/

bicycle n.

- 1 He might have been riding a bicycle. L19
- 2 He is really interested in riding a bicycle. L20
- 3 Both my father and my brother pretend that they like bicycle. L25 L26

/seɪv/

save v.

- 1 [Story]: He saved money for years.
- 2 did/how long/why/who...
- 3 The man who saved money for years had trouble finding his bank card. L28
- 4 save sb's life

/'wɜ:kʃɒp/

workshop n.

- 1 a room or building where things are made or repaired using machines and/or tools
- 2 The workshop which was stolen last night belongs to Leo. L28
- 3 They put out the fire in the workshop in the end. L27

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'hɛlpə/

helper n.

- 1 The helper who I fired last winter works for a big company now. L28
- 2 The helper put up the tent and started to tell stories. L27
- 3 That guy complains about his helper every day. L24

/ɪm'plɔɪ/

employ v.

- 1 employee n. employer n.
- 2 My boss employed five people.
- 3 My boss employs five people.
- 4 did/when/why...

/'grænsən/

grandson n.

- 1 His grandson wakes up at 6 everyday. L27
- 2 I had a letter from my grandson yesterday. L23

• save sb's life

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

31 Grammar

含义：过去发生，现在已经不发生了

I used to be a student.
I used to live in Auckland.
I used to play basketball.
I used to cook everyday.

否定: didn't use to do...

一般疑问句: Did 主语 use to do...

used to do

This building is now a drug store.
It used to be a cinema.

used to do

She used to have long hair when she was a girl.
I don't drink beer now, but I used to drink it.

used to do 活动

talk about your life:
I used to live in Beijing.
I used to be a bus driver.
I used to have long hair.
I used to drink tea a lot. ...
used to do sth.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

31 Story+Expressions

- It is/was sb's job to do sth.
- In sb's twenties

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

It is/was sb's job to do sth.

It is my job to clean this whole building.

Is it your job to clean this whole building?
why...

It was my job to teach English.

In sb's twenties

I used to play basketball in my twenties.

She decided to go to New York in her
twenties.

did/where/why...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/wʌns/***once**

once upon a time

*/temp'teɪʃən/***temptation n.**

- 1 resist the temptation
- 2 It is my job to resist the temptation. L31
- 3 She has trouble resisting the temptation. L28
- 4 “I can’t resist the temptation” he said in a weak voice. L15

*/'ɑ:tɪkl/***article n.**

- 1 If you read the article, you will understand my words. L16
- 2 [Story]: The woman first bought a few small articles.
- 3 did/who/where/what...

*/ræp/***wrap v.**

- 1 She sat there and wrapped up presents for her children.
- 2 did/who/when...
- 3 He must be wrapping up the presents now. L17
- 4 In stead of wrapping up the presents, she just gave them to me. L20

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'sɪmpli/***simply adv.**

- 1 [Story]: The woman simply took the parcel.
- 2 did/who/why...
- 3 She is simply interested in fishing. L20

*/ə'rest/***arrest v.**

- 1 He was arrested last night. L10
- 2 They must have been arrested last night. L21
- 3 The man who was arrested last night has trouble resisting the temptation all his life. L28

- once upon a time
- resist the temptation
- wrap up sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

32 Grammar

as...as

回顾: NCE1L11

as adv. 同等地/一样地

as conj. 像

The blue car is as clean as the red car.

That car is as expensive as this one.

as...as

not as(so) ... as... 否定可用 so

He is not as(so) honest as his father.

It's not warm, but it isn't so cold as yesterday.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

32 Story+Expressions

- It is easy for sb. to do sth.
- hand sth. to sb.
- wrap sth. up
- as quickly as possible

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

It is easy for sb. to do sth.

I used to be an actor, so it was easy for me to cry. L31

It is easy for these children to put up the tent. L27

It is not easy for anyone to take a taxi at this time. L29

v. + as quickly as possible

We must wrap these presents up as quickly as possible.

They have put up the tent as quickly as possible. L27

Please park your car as quickly as possible. L16

hand sth. to sb.

Can you hand the salt to me?

Why can't you hand the salt to me?

In my twenties, It is my job to hand the paper to our customers. L31

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'dæknəs/
darkness n.

- 1 Why are you sitting in the darkness?
- 2 She was sitting in the darkness.
- 3 was/why/who...

/ɪk'spleɪn/
explain v.

- 1 explain sth. to sb.
- 2 Please explain this to me like I am five years old.
- 3 I don't know how to explain it.
- 4 She must have explained this to her husband.
L17

/keəst/ /ʃɔ:r/
coast n. shore n.

- 1 In contrast to a coast, a shore can border any body of water, while the coast must border an ocean or a sea. Therefore, in that sense, a coast is a type of shore.
- 2 [Story]: One afternoon she set out from the coast in a small boat.
- 3 did/when/where/who...

/sto:m/
storm n.

- 1 She was/got caught in a storm.
- 2 was/how/who...

/tə'wɔ:dz/
towards prep.

- 1 walk/run towards
- 2 Look, your dog is running towards that ball.
- 3 Two man walked towards the park.
- 4 did/who/why/where...

/rɒk/
rock n.

- 1 [Story]: Towards evening, the boat struck a rock.
- 2 Did the boat strike a rock towards evening?
- 3 when/what/why...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/laɪt/
light n.

- 1 Can you see the light there?
- 2 If you can see the light on the coast, just swim towards it. L16
- 3 The light went out last night, and the room was in total darkness.

/e'hed/
ahead adv.

- 1 Be careful, school ahead.
- 2 [Story]: Early next morning, she saw a light ahead.
- 3 did/when/who...
- 4 go ahead

/klif/
cliff n.

- 1 After they climbed up the cliff, they cooked a meal over an open fire.
- 2 It is easy for him to climb the cliff. L32
- 3 My father used to take me to the cliff. L31

/'strægl/
struggle v.

- 1 [Story]: The girl struggled up the cliff towards the light.
- 2 did/where/who/when...

/'hɒspɪtəl/
hospital n.

- 1 This hospital was built years ago. L10
- 2 This hospital must have been built years ago. L21
- 3 This hospital used to be a cinema. L31

- explain sth. to sb.
- go ahead

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

33 Story+Expressions

- On doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

On doing sth, ...

On entering the room, we saw her.
As soon as we had entered the room,
we saw her.
On arriving at the station, he found my
parents.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'steɪʃən/***station**

1 police station

2 The police station was built years ago.

3 They are building the police station.

4 They are talking in the police station.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/məʊst/***most adv. adj.**

1 She is the most beautiful girl in her class.

2 She was most(very) surprised when she

heard the news.

Grammar

过去完成时被动

一般现在时: am/is/are + done

一般过去时: was/were + done

一般将来时: will be + done

现在完成时: have/has been + done

过去完成时: had been + done

The china had never been used.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
4. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
5. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

34 Story+Expressions

- call at
- expect sth. to be found

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

call at

I called at that shop yesterday morning.
did/where/when/why...

You must call at the police station as
quickly as possible. L32

expect sth. to be found

I (never) expected my wallet to be
found by the police....

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

35 Words

单 词 造 句 指 南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/'waɪl/

while n.

- 1 a short while ago
 - 2 A short while ago, he called at the police station. L34
 - 3 He called out to his friends a short while ago. L30
 - 4 did/when...

/rɪ'gret/

regret v.

- 1 regret sth.
 - 2 She immediately regretted her words.
 - 3 did/who/what...

/fa:/

far **adv.**

- 1 far more interesting/exciting
 - 2 I used to be a taxi driver, but my new job is far more interesting. L31
 - 3 In my twenties, it is far more difficult to explain that to my parents. L31 L33

11

rush v.

- 1 rush out of/towards
 - 2 He rushed out of the building.
 - 3 He rushed towards the bus.
 - 4 did/who/where...

/ækt/

act v.

- 1 act quickly
 - 2 [Story]: Roy acted quickly. (as quickly as possible)
 - 3 did/who/why...

/ streɪt /

go straight ahead

- a short while ago
 - regret sth.
 - rush out of/towards
 - go straight ahead
 - give me a fright
 - get a fright
 - Shortly afterwards

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 后复听电影片段 直到能听出关键短语/句子

35 Grammar

so & such

so+adj./adv.

I didn't enjoy the book.

The story was so stupid.

so quick

so nice

so quickly

such + (adj.)+n.

It was such a stupid story.

such nice people

so ... that

1. The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. L30
2. I was so tired that I fell asleep in the armchair.
3. The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.

such ... that

1. It was such a good book that I couldn't put it down.
2. It was such nice weather that we spent the whole day on the beach.

1. She worked hard.
2. It was a beautiful day.
3. I was tired.
4. We had a good time on holiday.
5. She speaks English well.
6. I've got a lot of things to do.
7. The music was loud.
8. I had a big breakfast.
9. It was horrible weather.

- You could hear it from miles away.
- You would think it was her native language.
- We spent the whole day indoors.
- She made herself ill.
- I couldn't open my eyes.
- I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.
- We decided to go to the beach.
- I don't know where to begin.
- We didn't want to come home.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study—Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法 Unit 102

35 Story+Expressions

- see sb. do sth.
- see sb. doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

see sb. do sth. & see sb. doing sth.

I saw Tom get into his car and drive away. (全程)

I saw Kate waiting for a bus. (进行)

中级红皮书

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'rekɔ:d/ /rɪ'kɔ:d/
record n. record v.

- 1 set up a new world record
- 2 break the record
- 3 He was so fast that he set up a new world record last night. L35
- 4 The man who broke the record last year set up a new world record yesterday. L28

/strɒŋ/
strong adj.

- 1 as strong as a horse; strong like a horse
- 2 He used to be very strong. L31
- 3 He used to be as strong as a horse. L32
- 4 After the box had been broken by that strong man, ... L34

/'swɪmə/
swimmer n.

- 1 That swimmer never expected his swimming goggles to be found. L34
- 2 In his twenties, he is a very strong swimmer. L31
- 3 He is such a great swimmer that ... L35

/sək'si:d/
succeed v.

- 1 succeed in doing sth.
- 2 She succeeded in resisting the temptation. L32
- 3 She succeeded in finding a new job.
- 4 did/who...

/treɪn/
train v.

- 1 train sb. to do sth.
- 2 [Story]: Mr. Hart has trained his daughter for years.
- 3 has/who/how long/why...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'æŋkʃəs/
anxious adj. anxiously adv.

- 1 She was very anxious last night.
- 2 was/who/when...
- 3 They were watching the game anxiously.
- 4 were/who/how/why...

/ɪn'tend/
intend v.

- 1 intend to do sth.
- 2 For some reason, she intends to learn Chinese. L21
- 3 She intends to take a taxi. L29
- 4 does/why/who...

/'sɒlid/
solid adj.

- 1 solid food
- 2 That baby can't eat any solid food.
- 3 Why can't that baby eat any solid food?
- 4 It is easy for a 8 years old child to eat solid food. L32

- **set up a new world record**
- **break the record**
- **as strong as a horse**
- **strong like a horse**
- **succeed in doing sth.**
- **train sb. to do sth.**
- **intend to do sth.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段、直到能 听出关键短语/句子

36 Story+Expressions

- hope to do sth.
- be sure to do sth.
- take some rests/a rest

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

hope to do sth.

She hopes to break the record tonight.
does/who/when...

They hope to spend sometime in the country. L20

take some rests/a rest

They were so tired that they decided to take some rests. L35

She intends to take a rest at 2 o'clock.

be sure to do sth.

She is sure to break the record.
She is sure to wake up early tomorrow morning. L27
They are sure to pay the bill. L18

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/həʊld/ /həld/ /ə'limpɪk/
hold - held v. Olympic

- 1 The Olympic Games were held in Beijing China in 2008.
- 2 were/where/when...
- 3 The next Winter Olympic Games will be held in Italy.
- 4 will/where/when

/'gʌvənmənt/
government

- 1 He used to work for the government. L31
- 2 He realized that they were working for the government. L20
- 3 The man who works for the government flew to New York. L4 L28

/ɪ'mens/ /'steɪdiəm/
immense adj. stadium n.

- 1 It is such an immense stadium that... L35
- 2 I saw them cleaning the immense stadium. L35
- 3 The immense stadium must have been built years ago. L21

/'stændəd/
standard

- 1 Olympic-standard swimming pool n.
- 2 The Chinese government succeeded in building an Olympic-standard swimming pool. L36
- 3 The Olympic-standard swimming pool was built years ago. L10

/'kæpitl/
capital

- 1 Beijing is the capital of China.
- 2 She intends to go to the capital of China next month. L36
- 3 does/where/when...
- 4 Nanjing used to be the capital of China. L31

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/fæn'tæstɪk/
fantastic

/dɪ'zaɪn/
design

- 1 This building was designed by a famous guy. L10
- 2 This building must have been designed by a famous guy. L21
- 3 She has trouble designing the whole building. L28

- **hold a meeting**
- **fantastic**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

37 Grammar

将来完成时 – 用法1

用法1: 一个动作持续或重复到将来
(have done的将来时)

We will have taken five exams by next Friday.

将来完成时 – 用法2

用法2: 一个动作截止到未来某个时间前完成

肯定: We will have taken five exams by next Friday.

否定: will + not = won't

一般疑问句: will 提句首

We will have taken five exams by next Friday.

肯定: I will have finished my homework by next Friday.

否定: will + not = won't

一般疑问句: will 提句首

- Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years.
- Next year they will have been married for 25 years.
- When their son was born, they had been married for three years.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

37 Story+Expressions

- look forward to doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

look forward to doing sth. / sth.

We all look forward to spending the whole weekend in the country. L20

I look forward to seeing your father tonight.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ɪk'sept/

except

- 1 We work everyday except Sunday.
- 2 do/who/why...
- 3 There was no one else in the room except myself.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'medɪtə'reɪniən/

Mediterranean

/kəm'pleɪn/

complain v.

- 1 complain about sth.
- 2 It is easy for them to complain about the weather. L32
- 3 She is keen on complaining about the neighbor. L20
- 4 The man who complained about the hotel room lost his wallet this morning. L28

/'bɪtəli/

bitterly adv.

- 1 bitterly cold
- 2 It was bitterly cold last night.
- 3 was/when/why/how cold...
- 4 She looks forward to traveling to a bitterly cold city L37

/'sʌnʃaɪn/

sunshine n.

- 1 We walked in the warm sunshine.
- 2 did/when/where/why/who...
- 3 Her hair was like the sunshine.

/kən'tɪnjuəli/

continually adv.

- 1 The baby cried continually last night.
- 2 It rained continually last summer.
- 3 It snowed continually last winter.
- 4 did/when/where/why...

- complain about sth.
- bitterly cold

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

38 Grammar

had done
过去完成时
含义: 过去的过去
no sooner ... than / hardly ... when

no sooner ... than

He had no sooner returned than he bought a house and settled down in the country.

—...就...

主 had no sooner done than + 句子(did)

hardly ... when

He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house and left the country.

几乎刚...就

主 + had hardly done when + 句子(did)

had done

—...就...

主 had no sooner done than + 句子(did)

几乎刚...就

主 + had hardly done when + 句子(did)

He entered the apartment.

He fell on the floor.

He had no sooner entered the apartment than he fell on the floor.

He had hardly entered the apartment when he fell on the floor.

had done

—...就...

主 had no sooner done than + 句子(did)

I arrived at the station.

The train came.

I had no sooner arrived at the station than the train came.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

38 Story+Expressions

- dream of doing sth.
- plan to do
- settle down

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

dream of doing sth.

They often dreamed of having a good meal when they were young. L18
did/what/why/when/who...

She always dreams of asking him for a lift. L14

plan to do

They planned to move to Beijing. L6

They planned to work for me. L4

They planned to wrap it up as quickly as possible. L32

settle down

He planned to settle down in the country.
Did he plan to settle down in the country?
who/why/when/where...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ə'pe'reɪʃn/***operation n.**

- 1 have an operation
 2 She will be having an operation tonight. L13
 3 She dreamed of having this operation for many years. L38
 4 In his twenties, he used to have an operation almost every day. L31

*/sək'sesfəl/***successful adj.**

- 1 The operation was successful, but the patient died.
 2 She became successful when she was very young.
 3 did/when/who...

*/'peɪʃnət/***patient n.**

- 1 The patient had no sooner entered the room than he fell down on the floor. L38
 2 The patient will have stayed in the hospital for 10 days by the end of this week. L37
 3 The patient used to be strong like a horse. L31 L36

*/'fɔləʊɪŋ/***following adj.**

- 1 the following day
 2 She set up a new world record the following day. L36
 3 She was so angry that she ... the following day. L35
 4 I will explain everything to you the following day. L33

*/ə'ləʊn/***alone adj.**

- 1 He wrapped it up as quickly as possible when he was alone. L32
 2 The man who lives alone got a surprise this morning L28 L23

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/***exchange n.**

- 1 currency exchange

*/ɪn'kwɔɪəl/***inquire v.**

- 1 inquire about sth./sb.
 2 I inquired about Tom and was told that he doesn't live here anymore. L10
 3 You will have to inquire about that at the front desk. L17

*/'sɜ:tən/***certain adj.**

- 1 [Story]: He was inquiring about a certain patient.
 2 Was he inquiring about a certain patient?
 3 who/why/when...

*/'kɔ:lə/***caller n.**

- 1 It is my job to answer every callers' questions. L31
 2 This caller is as difficult as last one. L32
 3 We must explain this to every caller. L33

*/'relətɪv/***relative n.**

- 1 a relative of the patient
 2 The relative of the patient planed to settle down in the country. L38
 3 You must be the relative of the patient. L17
 4 The doctor realized that he was a relative of the patient. L20

- have an operation
- leave me alone
- inquire about sth./sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'həʊstɪs/***hostess n.**

- 1 host; actor—actress
 2 The hostess asked if they would arrive at 6. L39
 3 The hostess had no sooner entered the kitchen than there was a knock at the door. L38
 4 The kitchen must have been cleaned by the hostess. L21

*/ʌn'smeɪlɪŋ/***unsmiling adj.**

- 1 happy—unhappy; tidy—untidy
 2 The police inquired about the unsmiling lady last night. L39
 3 did/who/why/when...
 4 The unsmiling lady is as strong as a horse. L36

*/taɪt/***tight adj.**

- 1 black tight dress n.
 2 She never expected her black tight dress to be found. L34
 3 The black tight dress which was bought years ago is being washed right now. L10 L28
 4 It's too tight.

*/fɪks/***fix v.**

- 1 He can fix almost everything in the house.
 2 I saw him fixing the cooker last night. L35
 3 His eyes were fixed on the hostess.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/gloʊb/***globe n.**

- 1 She asked where you had bought the globe. L39
 2 This is such a nice globe that ... L35
 3 When she was young, she used to sell globes on the street. L31

*/dɪ'speə/***despair n.**

- 1 In despair, he started to run as quickly as possible. L24
 2 Instead of calling the police, in despair, he ran away. L20

• In despair

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

40 Grammar

虚拟语气

结构:

If +did/were,

主 + would/should/could/might do.

did 并非表示过去

If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

If I knew them better, I might invite them to dinner.

含义:

1. if从句中v.与现在事实相反

2. 说话人认为, if从句中v.发生的几率非常低

If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

If I knew them better, I might invite them to dinner.

It's cold. If I were you, I would put my coat on.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

40 Story+Expressions

- take my seat
- be busy doing sth.
- Will you be doing sth?

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

take my seat

When I took my seat beside her
= When I sat beside her
You can take my seat.

Will you be doing sth?

Will you be having dinner with me tonight?
Will you be giving him a call?

be busy doing sth.

She is busy having an operation. L39
I was busy finishing my homework.
were/when/who...
They were busy wrapping it up. L32

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ru:d/***rude adj.**

1 rudely adv. L1

2 The hostess who we met last night was very rude. L28

3 If I were you, I wouldn't be so rude. L40

4 He is so rude that they ... L35

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'mɪrəl/***mirror n.**

1 The mirror was broken by the hostess. L10

2 They must have bought the mirror last year. L17

3 She had no sooner taken out the mirror than it fell on the floor. L38

*/həʊl/***hole n.**

1 There is a hole in the wall.

2 modern chairs with holes in it.

3 She dreamed of buying a modern chair with holes in it for a long time. L38

4 His eyes were fixed on that hole in the wall. L40

*/rɪ'mɑ:k/***remark v.**

1 [Story]: I remarked suddenly/rudely.

2 She remarked rudely at the dinner party last night.

3 did/who/where/when

*/rɪ'maɪnd/***remind v.**

1 reminder n. L16

2 remind sb. of sth./sb. L16

3 She reminds me of the hostess we met last night. L28

4 He reminds me of my father.

5 does/who/why...

*/'laɪθaʊs/***lighthouse n.**

1 The lighthouse must have been built years ago. L21

2 If we were on holiday, we would go to that lighthouse. L40

3 She dreamed of climbing up the lighthouse when she was young. L38

• remind sb. of sth./sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句

2. 反复听电电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

41 Grammar

need

I need your help.
Do you need my help?
She needs an apple.
Does she need an apple?

need

She needs to sleep.
Does she need to sleep?
Why does she need to sleep?
You don't have to do that.
You don't need to do that.

need

You needn't do that.

needn't have done 本不必如此。

但事情已经发生了，有后悔的语言效果。
George went out. He took an umbrella because he thought it was going to rain. But it didn't rain.
He _____ an umbrella. (needn't have taken)

Ann bought some eggs when she went shopping. When she got home, she found that she already had plenty of eggs. She _____ any eggs. (needn't have bought)

A friend got angry with you and shouted at you. You think this was unnecessary. Later you say to him/her. You _____ at me. (needn't have shouted)

Brain had no money, so he sold his car. A few days later he won some money in a lottery. He _____ his car. (needn't have sold)

When we went on holiday ,we took the camera with us but we didn't use it in the end.

We _____ the camera with us.
(needn't have taken)

I thought I was going to miss my train so I rushed to the station. But the train was late and in the end I had to wait 20 minutes.

I _____ to the station. (needn't have rushed)
need

Why did you wash that shirt?

It wasn't dirty.

You _____ it. (needn't have washed)

Leo bought some presents for you. And give them to you.

You say, "you _____ all these."
(needn't have bought)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study—Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

41 Story+Expressions

- regret doing sth.
- find sth. adj.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

regret doing sth.

I regretted helping him on the street yesterday morning.

did/when/who/why...

He regretted drinking the milk in the fridge.

I think he regrets telling that story. L27

find sth. adj.

He finds this book very interesting.

She finds this mirror very rude.

does/why/who...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句

2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ˈmju:zɪkəl/

musical adj. n. L10

- 1 watch a musical
 2 I regretted watching that musical last night. L41
 3 I really like the musical we watched last month. L28
 4 She asks if you like to watch a musical. L39

/ˈmɑ:kɪt/

market n.

- 1 If you went to the market, you would see a lot of friends. L40
 2 We needn't have gone to the market. L41
 3 I look forward to going to the market. L37

/sneɪk/ /'tʃɑ:mə/

snake charmer n.

- 1 The snake charmer is busy eating his lunch. L40
 2 It is easy for a snake charmer to play with a snake. L32
 3 Both his father and his grandfather are snake charmers. L25

/paɪp/

pipe n.

- 1 The pipe was bought by my grandfather many years ago. L10
 2 This is such a nice pipe that he refused to sell it. L35
 3 My father trained me to play pipe for a long time. L36

/tju:n/

tune n.

- 1 play a tune
 2 By the age of seven he could play any tune he heard on the piano in the dark, though he never learnt to read or write music. [Times]
 3 [Story]: He began to play a tune.
 4 6123456

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/glimps/

glimpse n.

- 1 I have a glimpse of sth./sb.
 2 If you had a glimpse of her, you would know how beautiful she is. L40
 3 She never dreamed of having a glimpse of the world. L38
 4 He failed to resist the temptation and had a glimpse of that. L32

/ˈmu:vment/ /mu:v/

movement n. move v.

- 1 The snake followed the movement of the pipe.
 2 did/why/what/how...
 3 If you followed the movement of tree, you would dance. L40
 4 You needn't have followed the movement of him. L41

/kən'tɪnju:/

continue v.

- 1 continue to do sth.
 2 [Story]: The snake continued to dance slowly.
 3 did/why/what/how...
 4 They continued to put up the tent. L27
 5 They continued to wrap it up. L32

/ˈɒbviəslɪ/

obviously adv.

- 1 Obviously, you needn't have told me that. L41
 2 Obviously, she is inquiring about you not your brother. L39
 3 Obviously, you don't love him.

/'dɪfərəns/ /'dɪfərənt/
difference n. **different** adj.

- 1 tell the difference between A and B
2 I couldn't tell the difference between these two singers.
3 If you helped me now, I could tell the difference. L40
4 It is easy for my wife to tell the difference between our twin sons. L32

/'ɪndiən/
Indian adj. **India** n.

/dɑːns/
dance v.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- **watch a musical**
- **play a tune**
- **have a glimpse of sth./sb.**
- **continue to do sth.**
- **tell the difference between A and B**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电电影段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

42 Story+Expressions

- have a long walk
- at the other side of sw.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

have a long walk

We will be having a long walk tonight.
L13

We needn't have had this long walk. L41
If I weren't tired, we would have a
long walk. L40

at the other side of sw.

Look, she is standing at the other side
of the market.

is/where/who...
She saw him running at the other side
of the street last night.
did/who/when/where...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/pəʊl/

pole n.

- 1 the South Pole; the North Pole
- 2 They have been to the South Pole.
- 3 They have gone to the South Pole.
- 4 If I moved to the South Pole, I could see the penguins everyday. L40

/flaɪt/

flight n.

- 1 catch a flight
- 2 How was your flight?
- 3 I have to catch a flight. L18
- 4 Your flight is 8, so you needn't have come here so early. L41

/ɪk'splɔ:rə/

explorer n.

- 1 If I knew that explorer, I would have a drink with him. L40
- 2 The explorer had no sooner entered the room than everybody began to sing. L33
- 3 You needn't explain this to that explorer. L33

/laɪ/ /leɪ/ /leɪn/

lie - lay - lain v.

- 1 The mountain that lie below is very well-known. L28
- 2 She is lying on the sofa.
- 3 Last night, she lay on the bed.

/'si:riəz/

serious adj.

- 1 run into serious trouble
- 2 If I ran into serious trouble, I would call the police. L40
- 3 You must give up that, or you will run into serious trouble. L20 L25
- 4 Are you serious? / Are you kidding?

/pɔɪnt/

point n.

- 1 at one point (time & place)
- 2 At one point in my life, I realized that I had never watched a musical. L20 L42
- 3 At one point on my way to the airport, my wallet was stolen. L10

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/sɪ:m/

seem v.

- 1 It seems that ...
- 2 It seems that she is having an operation. L39
- 3 It seems that he couldn't tell the difference between my money and his money. L42

/kræʃ/

crash v.

- 1 Her brother borrowed her car and crashed it.
- 2 have a crash
- 3 She saw his car crash into a tree. L35
- 4 If he intends to crash his car, you can't stop that. L16

/sæk/

sack n.

- 1 food sacks + v.
- 2 He used to carry almost a hundred food sacks everyday. L31
- 3 Instead of cleaning all the food sacks, he just threw them away. L20

/klɪə/

clear v.

- 1 [Story]: The plane cleared the mountains by 400 feet.
- 2 The cat cleared the chair.
- 3 did/how/what...

/eəkra:f/

aircraft n.

- 1 He dreamed of driving a aircraft when he was very young. L38
- 2 If you saw that aircraft, you would like it. L40

/'endles/ /plæn/
endless adj. plain n.

1 [Story]: The aircraft flew over the endless white plains.

2 did/how/why/when/what...

3 There is endless work to do in my office.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- catch a flight
- run into serious trouble
- at one point
- It seems that ...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

43 Grammar

be able to do sth. 含义
can VS am/is/are able to do sth.
We can see the lake from our hotel.
We are able to see the lake from our hotel.

be able to do sth. 时态

- am/is/are able to do sth.
We are able to see the lake from our hotel.
- was/were able to do sth.
We were able to see the lake from our hotel.
- have/has been able to do sth.
I haven't been able to sleep recently.
- will be able to do sth.
He will be able to help you tonight.

could VS was able to do

- 过去能力: could & was able to
1. My grandfather could speak five languages.
 2. My grandfather was able to speak five languages.

could VS was able to do

- 过去成功事件(succeeded in doing sth.): was able to
1. The fire spread quickly, but everybody was able to escape.
 2. Jack and Andy played a match yesterday.
Andy played well, but Jack was able to beat him.
 3. a: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
b: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I _____.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

43 Story+Expressions

- order sb. to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

order sb. to do sth.

If you ordered me to do this, I would do it. L40

I order you to take my seat. L40

She ordered me to continue to do that. L42

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'fɔːrɪst/***forest n.**

- 1 There was a big forest fire, and luckily everybody was able to get out. L43
 2 They needn't have cut down the forest. L41
 3 She ran into the forest as quickly as possible. L32

*/rɪsk/***risk n.**

- 1 take a risk
 2 She needn't have taken that risk. L41
 3 She is keen on taking a risk. L20
 4 is/why/who...

*/'pɪknɪk/***picnic n.**

- 1 have a picnic
 2 I saw Leo having a picnic near the forest. L35
 3 If it didn't rain, we would have a picnic. L40
 4 I had a picnic with Leo yesterday afternoon.
 5 did/who/when/where...

*/eɪdʒ/***edge n.**

- 1 at the edge of a forest 5
 2 They were having a picnic at the edge of a forest.
 3 were/who/where/when...
 4 I had a glimpse of a deer at the edge of a forest last night. L42

*/stræp/***strap n.**

- 1 [Story]: The strap broke.
 2 did/how/why...
 3 My mom asks me how the strap broke. L39
 4 This strap was made in Italy. L10
 5 This is the most beautiful strap I've ever seen. L8

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/pə'seʃən/***possession n.**

- 1 in sb's possession
 2 The book is now in my possession.
 3 This has been in my possession for a long time.
 4 has/what/why/how long

*/b्रeθ/***breath n.**

- 1 out of breath
 2 He is out of breath.
 3 is/who/why...
 4 He ran so fast that he was out of breath. L35
 5 She wanted to know why she was always out of breath. L39

*/'kɒntens/***contents n.**

- 1 the contents of the bag
 2 I find the contents of your bag very interesting. L41
 3 do/who/how...
 4 I couldn't tell the difference between the contents of your bag and my bag. L42

*/mɛnd/***mend v.**

- 1 chair; roof; hole in my shirt
 2 You needn't have mended that chair. L41
 3 (Can)Are you able to mend the roof for me? L43
 4 She intends to mend the hole in my shirt. L36

- **take a risk**
- **have a picnic**
- **at the edge of a forest**
- **in sb's possession**
- **out of breath**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句

2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子

44 Story+Expressions

- **rush up to sb.**
- **catch up with sb.**
- **go through**
- **run straight at sb.**
- **need doing sth.**

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

rush up to sb.

In despair, he rushed up to his mom. L40
did/who/why...

They rushed up to him, and put out
the fire. L27

run straight at sb.

If I come home early, my son and my
dog will run straight at me. L16

If I came home early, my son and my
dog would run straight at me. L40

catch up with sb.

She ran as fast as she could, but she
couldn't catch up with her brother.

Slow down so I can catch up with you.

need doing sth.

Does your suit need cleaning?
(=...need to be cleaned)

These clothes are dirty. They all need
washing.

Your hair is getting very long. It will
need cutting soon.

go through

They were going through the bag in
the forest.

were/what/where/when/who...

Don't go through my bag.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/klaɪə/ /'kɒnʃəns/

clear adj. conscience n.

- 1 At least now I can face/meet him with a clear conscience.
2 I have a clear conscience.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'wɔ:tɪ/

wallet n.

- 1 This wallet needs mending. L44
2 If I bought that wallet, I wound give it away. L40
3 He used to sell wallet on the street. L31

/'seɪvɪŋz/ /seɪv/

savings n. save v.

- 1 take his savings to the post office
2 He took his savings to the post office last week.
3 did/who/why...

/'vɪlɪdʒə/

villager n. village n.

- 1 The villager we met last night is having an operation. L39
2 The villagers are busy selling things to the tourists. L40
3 The villager is so angry that ... L35

/pə'seɪnt/

per cent percent

- 1 I'm 100 percent sure I'm right.
2 Are you 100 percent sure about this?

- I have a clear conscience.
- Are you 100 percent sure about this?

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电电影片段，直到能 听出关键短语/句子

45 Story+Expressions

- sb. learn that + 宾从
- return sth. to sb.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

sb. learn that + 宾从

She learnt yesterday that they were able to get out of the forest. L43

She learnt that (her father were busy reading the book which she gave him yesterday).

return sth. to sb.

The police returned his bicycle to him yesterday.

did/who/when/why...

The diamond will be returned to him tonight. L21

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ʌn'laʊd/***unload v. load**

- 1 They are unloading the boxes. L2
- 2 The boxes are being unloaded. L10
- 3 These boxes must have been unloaded yesterday afternoon. L21
- 4 He used to unload boxes everyday. L31
- 5 You needn't have unloaded all the boxes. L41

*/'wʊdn/***wooden adj.**

- 1 wooden chair/bridge... L8
- 2 If they bought that wooden chair, I would give you one too. L40
- 3 This wooden bridge needs mending. L44
- 4 She finds this wooden chair beautiful. L41

*/ɪk'stri:mli/***extremely adv.**

- 1 extremely tired/thirsty/heavy...(adj.)
- 2 She is extremely tired/thirsty.
- 3 She inquired about that extremely heavy box last night. L39
- 4 did/who/what/why/when...

*/ə'kɜ:/***occur v.**

- 1 It occurred to sb. that...
- 2 It occurred to me that I forgot your birthday.
- 3 It occurred to me that I worked for that company for ten years. L4
- 4 It occurred to sb. to do sth.
- 5 It occurred to her to ask him for a lift. L14

*/ə'stənɪʃ/***astonish v.**

- 1 be astonished at sth/was surprised/was shocked...
- 2 In New York, visitors are astonished at high buildings.
- 3 are/who...
- 4 I was astonished at his stupidity.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/paɪl/***pile n.**

- 1 a pile of woods/books/questions
- 2 I've got a pile of questions.
- 3 The captain ordered his men to throw a pile of books out of the ship. L43
- 4 You have to return this pile of woods to Leo. L45

*/'wʊlən/**/gʊdз/***woollen n. woolen goods n.**

- 1 a pile of woollen goods
- 2 She bought a pile of woollen goods for her mom last month.
- 3 did/who/when...
- 4 These woollen goods were made in China. L10

*/dɪ'skevər/***discover v.**

- 1 Several new species of plants have recently been discovered. L10
- 2 They discovered a new plant last month.
- 3 did/what/when/how/who...

*/əd'mɪt/***admit v.**

- 1 admit doing sth.
- 2 [Story]: The man admitted hiding in the box.
- 3 The thief admitted stealing the wallet this morning.
- 4 did/who/what/where...
- 5 sb. admit that ...
- 6 She admitted (that) she had made a mistake.

/kən'feɪn/

confine v.

- 1 sth. / sb. was confined to +地点
- 2 [Story]: He had been confined to the wooden box for over eighteen hours.
- 3 had/who/what/how long/why...
- 4 He was confined to the kitchen for an hour.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'nɔ:məl/

normal adj.

- 1 normal guy/people/price/life
- 2 I just want to live a normal life.
- 3 He is just a normal guy.
- 4 What's the normal price?
- 5 This is normal. Is this normal?

- It occurred to sb. that...
- It occurred to sb. to do sth.
- be astonished at sth
- admit doing sth.
- sb. admit that ...

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

46 Grammar

同位语从句

同位语: 补充说明的名词

I have just received a letter from my brother, Tim. L4

同位语从句: 一个(完整)的句子补充说明一个名词。

No one could account for the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy.

同位语从句

Scientists have reached the conclusion that the temperature on Earth is getting higher and higher.

We were all happy about the news that the experiment was very successful.

I have a theory that ...

I have no doubt that he will help me.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

46 Story+Expressions

- sb. account for the fact that+句子

习惯用法 造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

sb. account for the fact that+句子

No one could account for the fact that ...

1. he was able to get out.
2. he ordered me to beat him.
3. she is out of breath.

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'θɜːsti/***thirsty adj.**

- 1 No one could account for the fact that he is extremely thirsty. L46
 2 Everybody was astonished at how thirsty he is. L46
 3 Can't you tell the difference between thirsty and hungry? L42

*/gəʊst/***ghost n.**

- 1 He is one of those rare people who believes in ghost. L28
 2 He believes in ghost.
 3 does/who/why...
 4 He used to believe in ghost. L31

*/haʊnt/***haunt v.**

- 1 This room is haunted.
 2 This room was haunted years ago.
 3 This room has been haunted for 5 years. L10
 4 He inquired about the room which has been haunted for 5 years.

*/blɒk/***block v.**

- 1 The doors is blocked by a chair.
 2 is/what/why...
 3 A fallen tree is blocking the road.
 4 What is blocking the road?
 5 The road must have been blocked by the tree. L21

*/'fɜːnɪtʃə/***furniture n.**

- 1 By the end of this year, he will have sold the furniture for ten years. L37
 2 This is such nice furniture that we must have it now. L35
 3 He always complains about the furniture which he bought last month. L24

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'wɪskɪ/***whisky n.**

- 1 He had a glimpse of whisky on the table. L42
 2 did/what/who...
 3 Neither your mom nor your dad likes to drink whisky. L25
 4 You must give up drinking whisky. L20

*/sə'dʒɛst/***suggest v.**

- 1 What do you suggest?
 2 He suggests that ...+句子

*/ʃeɪk/ /ʃʊk/ /'ʃeɪkən/***shake shook shaken v.**

- 1 She is shaking her head on the street.
 2 is/why/who/where...
 3 A young boy climbed into the apple tree and shook the branches.
 4 did/who...

*/eɪk'sept/***accept v.**

- 1 If you gave me your pub, I still wouldn't accept it. L40
 2 You needn't have accepted his advice. L41
 3 I can't accept your money.

• shake sb's head

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

47 Story+Expressions

- be up for sale
- hear sb./sth. doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

be up for sale

If a property or company is up for sale, its owner is trying to sell it. L16

This is up for sale.

Is this up for sale?

hear sb./sth. doing sth. L35 see

hear sb./sth. doing sth. (非全程, 进行)

1 I heard them talking.

2 I could hear it raining.

3 Can you hear a baby crying?

hear sb./sth. do sth. (全程)

1 I heard them go out.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/pʊl/
pull v.

- 1 [Story]: My dentist has just pulled out one of my teeth.
 2 My dentist pulled out one of my teeth yesterday.
 3 Instead of pulling out the right one, my dentist pulled out the wrong tooth. L20

/'kɒtən/ /wʊl/
cotton wool

- 1 She always pretends that she has cotton wool in her hands. L26
 2 In her twenties, she used to sell cotton wool to doctors. L31
 3 Please return these cotton wool to me. L45

/kə'lɛkt/
collect v. collection n.

- 1 He used to collect stamps. L31
 2 After he had collected stamps for ten years, he set up a new world record. L14 L36
 3 She is keen on collecting stamps. L20
 4 private collection
 5 He is proud of his collection. L12
 6 He showed me his stamp collection.

/nɒd/
nod v.

- 1 She nodded when I asked her if she was ready.
 2 She neither nodded nor said anything. L25
 3 She could only nod, because her mouth was full of food.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'mi:nwɔ:l/
meanwhile adv.

- 1 He won't come until ten o'clock. Meanwhile you can have a rest.
 2 You can set the table. Meanwhile, I'll start making dinner.
 3 She spent four years studying for her law degree. Meanwhile, she continued to work at the bank.

• **private collection**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

48 Story+Expressions

- It is impossible for sb. to do
- rest for a while

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

It is impossible for sb. to do

It is impossible for him to break the record. L36

It is impossible for him to catch up with his brother. L44

It is impossible for him to do

...rest for a while

I needn't have rested for a while. L41
Instead of working, he rested for a while. L20

I need to rest for a while.
do/who/how long...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/tired/

tired adj.

- 1 get/be tired of sth./doing sth.
- 2 She is tired of working late every night.
- 3 is/why/who/...
- 4 I'm a little tired of pizza. Can we get something else?
- 5 I'm tired of listening to his complaints.
- 6 We got tired of the country and we moved into town.

/ri:əl/

real adj.

- 1 a read bed/reason/friend ...
- 2 You are a real friend.
- 3 We needn't have bought a real bed. L41
- 4 I don't know the real reason.
- 5 He dreamed of buying a real bed for years. L38

owner n. own v.

- 1 He is the owner of a pub.
- 2 He owns a pub.
- 3 does/who/what/why...
- 4 I want to know who is the owner of this pub. L39
- 5 The owner had no sooner entered the pub than he found that all the chairs were stolen. L38

/sprɪŋ/

spring n.

- 1 If he found all the springs under the bed, I would eat it. L40
- 2 I regretted buying all these springs. L40
- 3 He was able to find all the springs at last. L43

/mæt̬rəs/

mattress n.

- 1 I'm look forward to buying a new mattress. L37
- 2 She couldn't resist the temptation and bought the mattress. L32
- 3 He used to sell mattresses in the shop. L31

/gʌst/ /swi:p/ /swept/

gust n. sweep swept v.

- 1 [Story]: A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof.
- 2 Did a gust of wind sweep the bed off the roof?
- 3 What did a gust of wind sweep off the roof.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'kɔ:tjə:d/

courtyard n.

- 1 in the courtyard 5
- 2 He explained everything to me in the courtyard last night.
- 3 did/who/when/where/why...
- 4 He had trouble parking his car in the courtyard. L28

/smæʃ/

smash v.

- 1 [Story]: The bed was smashed to pieces.
- 2 was/what/why...
- 3 smash sth. to pieces
- 4 They had a fight and he smashed the window to pieces.
- 5 Why is he interested in smashing things to pieces? L20

/mɪ'reækjələsli/

miraculously adv. unhurt adj. hurt v.

- 1 He had a car crash yesterday and was miraculously unhurt.
- 2 How was he unhurt?
- 3 Miraculously, he made a big decision on the last day. L3
- 4 Miraculously, he didn't pay any attention. L1

/gle:nsl/

glance v.

- 1 : to take a quick look at something
- 2 glanced at his watch/the menu/the hat...
- 3 He glanced at the woman but quickly looked away. L25
- 4 He glanced at his watch.
- 5 did/who/what/why...

/'prɒmptli/
promptly adv.

- 1 He replied to the email promptly. L14
2 did/how soon/who...
3 He must have left the house promptly. L17
4 He can't have left the house promptly. L17
5 He may have left the house promptly. L19

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- get/be tired of sth./doing sth.
- A gust of wind swept...
- in the courtyard
- smash sth. to pieces
- glanced at sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

49 Grammar

分词作状语

1. 分词: doing VS done

am/is/are + doing NCE1 L31

was/were + doing NCE2 L7

have + done NCE1 L83–90

was/were + done NCE1 L141–144

2.

分词 (doing & done) 作定语

done 作定语 L29	被动一般 被动完成 主动完成	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The 'taxi' is a small Swiss airplane called a 'Pilatus Porter'.on a ploughed fielda retired captain = a captain who has retired
doing作 定语 L30	主动进行 主动一般	<ul style="list-style-type: none">the sleeping child=the child who is sleepingI like the girl dancing with that guy.

分词 作 状 语	1. 前后主语一致(例外?)
	2. 去掉状从主语 & 连词(可留)
	3. 从句v.变分词
	doing 主动进行/主动一般
	done 被动完成/被动一般

3.

分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

The baby opened his eyes.

The baby began to cry.

When the baby opened his eyes, he began to cry.

(When) opening his eyes, the baby began to cry.

doing 作状语

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

She felt tired.

She went to bed early.

Because she felt tired, she went to bed early.

Feeling tired, she went to bed early.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

He got down on one knee.

He asked her to marry him.

After he got down on one knee, he asked her to marry him.

(After) Getting down on one knee, he asked her to marry him.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

He was rushing out of the room.

He was knocked down by a car.

As he was rushing out of the room, he was knocked down by a car.

Rushing out of the room, he was knocked down by a car.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

等车的时候, 一块砖砸到我头上了

Waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head. 

While I was waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

We arrived at the party.

We saw Ruth.

When we arrived at the party, we saw Ruth. Arriving at the party, we saw Ruth.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

He took off his shoes.

Ray walked into the house.

After he took off his shoes, Ray walked into the house.

Taking off his shoes, Ray walked into the house.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语:简化状从

L45: Sam Benton, the local butcher,
had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office.
... while he was taking his savings to the post office.
Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet.
He was taking his savings to the post office.

done 作状语

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语:简化状从

The city was destroyed during the war.
The city has now been rebuilt.
Although the city was destroyed during the war, the city has
now been rebuilt.
Destroyed during the war, the city has now been rebuilt.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语:简化状从

It is looked after carefully.
The plant can live through the winter.
If it is looked ..., the plant can ...
Looked after carefully, the plant can live through the winter.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语:简化状从

The house was built of wood.
It was clearly a fire risk.
As the house was built of wood, it was clearly a fire risk.
Built of wood, the house was clearly a fire risk.

doing VS done

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

The teacher came in.

The teacher was followed by students.

The teacher came in, followed by students.

The teacher came in.

The teacher followed the students.

The teacher came in, following the students.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

The car had an accident, hitting a train.

The car had an accident, hit by a train.

having done

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

He had completed the book.

He had a holiday.

After he had completed the book, he had a holiday. (After)

Having completed the book, he had a holiday.

After completing the book, he had a holiday.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

I had already seen it twice.

I didn't want to see it again.

Because I had already seen it twice, I didn't want to see it again.

Having already seen it twice, I didn't want to see it again.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

Having stayed in his room all day, he wanted to go out for some fresh air.

Because he had stayed in his room...

He had stayed in his room all day.

He wanted to go out for some fresh air.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

L20: After having spent whole morning on the river,

I always go home with an empty bag.

After I have spent whole morning ...

I have spent whole morning on the river.

I always go home with an empty bag.

not doing

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

I did not want to wake her.

I left the house silently.

Because I didn't want to wake her, I left the house silently.

Not wanting to wake her, I left the house silently.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

I didn't know what to do.

I asked him for help.

Since I didn't know what to do, I asked him for help.

Not knowing what to do, I asked him for help.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

I didn't expect anyone to be in the house.

I walked straight in.

Because I didn't expect ..., I walked...

Not expecting anyone to be in the house, I walked straight in.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

Not knowing what to do, I telephoned the police.

Because I didn't know what to do, I telephoned the police.

I didn't know what to do.

I telephoned the police.

be + adj. + n.

分词作状语

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

I am sorry.

Sorry.

I am fine, thank you.

Fine, thank you.

be 不翻译

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

They were excited.

They played video games.

(Being) excited, they played video games.

Excited, they played video games.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

My girlfriend is a doctor.

She knows what medicine you should take.

(Being) a doctor, my girlfriend knows what medicine
you should take.

3. 分词(doing & done)作状语: 简化状从

When I was ten years old, my family moved to the city.

When ten years old, my family moved to the city. X

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法 Unit 68

49 Story+Expressions

- save up for years to buy sth.
- for the first time in sb.'s life
- go to sleep

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

save up for years to buy sth.

sb. saved up for years to buy sth.
did/who/how many years/why...

for the first time in sb.'s life

For the first time in my life, + 句子

go to sleep

I went to sleep very early last night.
did/who/why/when...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/raɪd/ /rəʊd/ /'rɪdən/
ride n. v. rode ridden

Taken for a ride... [pun]

- 1 take a for b
- 2 take it for granted...
- 3 take sb. for a ride

/raɪd/ /rəʊd/ /'rɪdən/
ride n. v. rode ridden

- 1 ride a bike/horse
- 2 Look, she is riding a horse.
- 3 Have you ever ridden a horse before?

/ɪk'se:sʃən/
excursion n.

- 1 go on an excursion
- 2 Both my father and my brother went on an excursion last month. L25
- 3 did/who/when...
- 4 Next week we're going on an excursion.
- 5 are/when/who...

/kən'dʌktər/
conductor n.

- 1 As soon as I got on the bus, the conductor asked me to buy a ticket. L14
- 2 Although the conductor asked me to buy a ticket, I refused to do so.
- 3 As the conductor got tired of selling tickets, he quitted his job last week.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/vju:/
view n.

- 1 [Story]: get a good view of the countryside
- 2 We got a good view of the countryside.(city)
- 3 Did you get a good view of the countryside?
- 4 how/why didn't/who ...
- 5 We will get a good view of the countryside.

- **take it for granted**
- **ride a bike/horse**
- **go on an excursion**
- **get a good view of sth.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

50 Story+Expressions

- love/like doing sth.
- sth. take sb. st.
- in the front of / in front of
- I realized with a shock that... ...where to get off...
- prefer
- prefer to do sth. = prefer doing sth.
- I prefer a to b
- I prefer doing a to doing b
- I prefer to do a rather than (do) b.
- I'd prefer (= I would prefer) to do sth.
- I'd(would) prefer to do a rather than (do) b.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

love/like doing sth.

I love/like fishing in the river.
I love/like going to sleep early every night. L49

It take sb. st. to do sth.

My trip took me three hours.
Did your trip take you three hours?
how many hours/what/why/how long...
It takes me 20 minutes to cook rice.
It took me 20 minutes to walk to class yesterday.
红皮书初级Unit48

...where to get off...

[Story]: I'll tell you where to get off.
where to get off
= where you should get off
I wonder who to invite.
(=who I should invite)
Tell us what to do.
(= what we should do)
I don't know where to park the car.
Tell me when to pay.

in the front of / in front of

in the front of the bus (inside)
in front of the bus (outside)
L41 my wife was still in front of the mirror.

I realized with a shock that...

a gust of wind swept his bed off the roof.
he smashed everything in the kitchen to pieces.
he returned the money to me.

prefer: like, choose, or want one thing rather than another

prefer to do sth. = prefer doing sth.
1. I don't like cities. I prefer to live in the country. = I prefer living in the country.
2. I don't get up on Sundays. I prefer staying in bed. = I prefer to stay in bed.

prefer: like, choose, or want one thing rather than another

I prefer a to b (和b比我更喜欢a)
1. I prefer this coat to that coat.
2. I prefer basketball to football.
I prefer doing a to doing b (和做b比我更喜欢做a)
1. I prefer riding to walking.
2. I prefer going to the cinema to watching DVDs at home.

prefer: like, choose, or want one thing rather than another
I prefer to do a rather than (do) b.
(和做b相比, 我更喜欢做a)
1. Leo prefers to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.
2. I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

习惯用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

would prefer

I'd prefer (= I would prefer) to do sth.
1. I'd prefer to drive.
2. I'd prefer to have dinner now.
Would you prefer to have dinner now?
3. I'd prefer to go by myself.

would prefer

I'd(=would) prefer to do a rather than (do) b.
(和做b相比, 我更喜欢做a)
1. I'd prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
- 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/rɪ'wɔ:d/***reward n. v.**

- 1 sb. expect a nice reward...
 2 After the kids had worded hard all day, they expected a nice reward from their parents.
 3 He received the reward yesterday.
 4 did/who/when...
 5 Give you a reward.

*/və:tʃu:/***virtue n.**

Patience is a virtue.

*/daɪət/***diet n.**

- 1 go on a diet = be on a diet
 2 Most people prefer to go on a diet rather than go to a gym. L50
 3 Because he was so fat at that time, he went on a diet.
 4 She loves going on a diet. L50

*/fə'bɪd/ /fə'bæd/ /fə'bɪdən/***forbid forbade forbidden v.**

- 1 Smoking is forbidden here.
 2 forbid sb. to do sth.
 They forbid us to talk about it.
 My parents forbid me to come home late.
 You can't forbid me to go.

*/'hʌridli/***hurriedly adv. hurry v.**

- 1 quickly
 2 ...hurriedly shut the door/opened the door...
 3 ...he walked hurriedly...
 4 Hurriedly, he ordered his men to run to the forest.
 5 did/how/why/who...

*/ɪm'bærəs/***embarrass v.**

- 1 Don't embarrass me in front of my friends.
 2 You are embarrassing me/yourself.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'gɪlti/ /'gɪlti/
guiltily adv. guilty adj.

- 1 He looked at his mother guiltily.
 2 did/who/how/why...
 3 I think my dog regretted doing this and looked at me guiltily.
 4 She looked up guiltily as I came in. L15
 5 Guiltily realizing that she hadn't finished, Lucy worked all night. L49

*/strɪkt/***strict adj.**

- 1 She's on a very strict diet.
 2 is/who/why...
 3 a be strict with b
 4 She's very strict with her children.
 5 Leo is very strict with his students.
 6 Even though his diet is so strict, he was able to resist the temptation. L43 L32

*/ə'keɪʒənəli/***occasionally adv.**

- 1 Occasionally, they watched a musical in the theatre. L42
 2 We occasionally meet for a drink after work.
 3 It occurred to him that they occasionally have a picnic together. L46 L44

- expect/receive/give + reward
- go on a diet = be on a diet
- forbid sb. to do sth.
- a be strict with b

homework

-
1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)
-

51 Story+Expressions

- First of all,...
- write out a long list of ...
- pay sb. a visit ring the bell
- was not surprised to see that...
- It was obvious that ...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

First of all,...

First of all, I want you to know that I prefer swimming to running. L50

First of all, I love swimming. L50

First of all, I'd prefer to go to sleep early. L50

write out a long list of sth. (that ...)

First of all, he wrote out a long list of all the cars that he owns.

Leo wrote out a long list of all the books that he loves reading. L50

She wrote out a long list of all the shoes she likes.

pay sb. a visit / pay a visit

I paid him a visit last night.

Did you pay him a visit last night?

When did you pay him a visit?

Although she didn't like his house, she paid him a visit yesterday morning.

ring the bell

I prefer ringing the bell to knocking on the door. L50

After he had rung the bell, he realized with a shock that nobody was in. L50
I prefer to ring the bell first.

= I prefer ringing the bell first. L50

was not surprised to see that...

- I was not surprised to see that he had smashed everything in the kitchen to pieces. L49
- they were having a picnic at the edge of a forest. L44
- he was busy working. L40

It was obvious that ...

It was obvious that

- she preferred to stay here. L50
- she didn't know what to do. L50
- she was tired of cooking everyday. L49

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'temperəri/***temporarily adv.**

1 [Story]: I have temporarily put my books on the floor.

2 I have temporarily done sth...

3 I have temporarily wrapped up these in newspaper. L32

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/ɪnʃ/***inch n.**

1 every inch of sth. (=body / ground / house / wall / car ...)

2 The doctor examined every inch of his body.

3 She cleaned every inch of the house last night.

4 Every inch of her bedroom wall is covered with photos of pop stars. NCE1 L143

*/'ækʃuəli/***actually adv.**

1 That's actually a good idea.

2 Sir, I have more money actually.

3 I prefer to stay here actually. L50

*/speɪs/***space n.**

1 [Story]: At the moment, they cover every inch of floor space.

2 do/what/why...

3 I paid him a visit and found out that the books covered every inch of floor space. L51

- **every inch of sth.**
- **That's actually a good idea.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

52 Grammar

现在完成进行时

用法一: 过去进行的v.(结束)对现在有影响
结构

主 + have/has been doing sth.

主 + have/has + not + been doing sth.

Have/Has + 主 + been doing sth. ?

What have/has + 主 + been doing?

用法一: 过去进行的v.(结束)对现在有影响

肯定句: have been doing

Paul is very tired.

He has (=He's) been working very hard.
(he's tired now)

Your eyes look red. What happened?

I have been watching TV

Is it raining? No, but the ground is wet.

It has been raining.

一般疑问句: Have/Has+主+been doing sth.?

You're out of breath.

Have you been running?
(you're out of breath now).

John looks sunburnt.

You ask: (you/ sit in the sun?)

Have you been sitting in the sun?

特殊疑问句: What have/has+主+been doing?

You meet a friend in the street. His face and hands are very dirty.

You ask: (what/ you/ do?)

What have you been doing?

用法二：过去进行的v.持续(重复)到现在，也许还会继续。

(同have + done用法二)

结构

主 + have/has been doing sth.

It is raining now.

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it been raining?

It has been raining for two hours.

Tim is still watching TV.

He's been watching TV all day.

现在完成进行时

She has been painting her bedroom.

强调动作本身，动作完成与否不重要

She has painted her bedroom.

强调动作结果，已经完成。

homework

- 1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
- 2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
- 3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

52 Story+Expressions

- get sth. in order
- To make matters worse...
- A short while ago...
- help sb. to do sth.
- gaze at sth.
- in sb's spare time...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

get sth. in order

- 1 I haven't been able to get my new room in order. L43
- 2 Why haven't you been able to get your new room in order?
- 3 Their mom asked them to get their bedroom in order. L11

To make matters worse....

- 1 she went on a diet. L51
- 2 he went on an excursion yesterday. L50
- 3 Leo went to sleep very early last night. L49

A short while ago...

- 1 he smashed everything in the living room to pieces. L49
- 2 they heard Leo crying. L47
- 3 they had a picnic at the edge of a forest. L44

help sb. to do sth.

- 1 Can you help me to carry this?
- 2 Would you help me to ring the bell? L51
- 3 They helped my family to settle down here. L38

gaze at sth.

- 1 She was so cute that Leo gazed at her for a long time. L35
- 2 Why did you gaze at her?

in sb's spare time...

- In my spare time,
- 1 I prefer swimming to running. L50
 - 2 I'd prefer to take a walk with my family. L50
 - 3 I love reading all kinds of books. L50

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/hɒt/ /waɪə/

hot adj. wire n.

- 1 a hot wire...
- 2 electrical wire / electric wire
- 3 v?

/'feɪmən/

fireman

- 1 Why is that fireman out of breath? L44
- 2 That fireman has been running. L52
- 3 We can help that fireman to get this room in order. L52

/kɔ:z/

cause v. n.

- 1 What caused the fire?
- 2 [Story]: Forest fires are often caused by broken glass.
- 3 Are forest fires often caused by broken glass?
- 4 why/what/how often...
- 5 discover + cause
- 6 A fireman discovered the cause yesterday.
- 7 did/how/why/who/when...

/ɪg'zæmɪn/

examine v. + n.

- 1 The police emptied her bag and examined the contents. L44
- 2 [Story]: examine + ground
- 3 This fireman examined the ground last night.
- 4 did/who/why/when...
- 5 Your cat's teeth must be examined once a year. L6

/æk'sɪ'dentəli/

accidentally adv.

- 1 To make matters worse, he accidentally rang the bell. L51&52
- 2 I cut myself accidentally.

/ri'meɪnz/

remains n.

- 1 [Story]: the remains of a snake + v.
- 2 She accidentally glanced at the remains of a snake. L49
- 3 She gazed at the remains of a snake. L52
- 4 Can you help me to move the remains of a snake? L52

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/vɒlt/

volt n.

- 1 I want to buy a 220 volt transformer.
- 2 do/what/why...

/paʊəl/ /laɪn/

power line

- 1 [Story]: the electric wires of a 16,000-volt power line
- 2 Don't touch the power line.
- 3 Stay away from the power line.
- 4 We are forbidden to walk near the power line. L51

/sɒlv/

solve v.

- 1 solve + problem/mystery
- 2 In the end, he was able to solve that problem. L1 & L43
- 3 We're trying to solve the problem here. L7

/'mɪstəri/

mystery n.

- 1 solve/remain + mystery
- 2 What happened next remains a mystery. The Illusionist (2006)
- 3 To make matters worse, the fireman couldn't solve the mystery. L52

/snætʃ/
snatch v.

- 1 The bird snatched the snake from the sea.
2 did/what/when/why...
3 She snatched an apple and ran out of the house.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/spæk/
spark n.

- 1 A cigarette spark started the forest fire.
2 did/what/how/when...
3 [Story]: It sent sparks down to the ground.
4 did/what/when...

- electrical wire / electric wire
- discover + cause
- the remains of a snake
- solve + problem/mystery
- solve/remain + mystery

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

53 Story+Expressions

- **find out ...**
- **throw away...**

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

find out

I need to find out who did that. L41
How did you find out about that?
If I were you, I wouldn't let them find out about this. L40

throw away

I threw /θru:/ it away last night.
Did you throw it away last night?
when/why/who/what....
We needn't have thrown it away. L41

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'stɪki/ /'fɪŋgə/

sticky adj. stick v. finger n.

- 1 There's some sticky stuff in your hair. NCE1 L25
- 2 stick to the plan...
- 3 Let's just stick to the plan. Three Kings (1999)
- 4 Absolutely not. We have to stick to the plan. Safety Not Guaranteed (2012)
- 5 hurt / put / point ... finger

/paɪ/

pie n.

- 1 It took me three hours to make this pie. L50
- 2 After making this pie, I had a bath upstairs. L49
- 3 I'd prefer to eat this pie with you rather than have a steak alone. L50

/'peɪstri/ /flaʊə/

pastry n. flour

- 1 [Story]: My hands were soon covered with sticky pastry.
- 2 were/why/what/how soon...
- 3 Thanks for the pastry. The Secret Life of Walter Mitty (2013)
- 4 There is a pastry shop nearby. Man on Fire (2004)
- 5 I need flour. Give me two bags of flour. Hotel Rwanda (2004)
- 6 We're never allowed to play with flour in mom's kitchen. L10

/mɪks/

mix v.

- 1 be busy doing sth. L40
- 2 Don't mix beer and wine, ever! Groundhog Day (1993)
- 3 [Story]: I was busy mixing butter and flour.
- 4 were/who/what

/ə'nɔɪɪŋ/

annoying adj.

- 1 Yeah, that could be annoying. Avengers: Infinity War (2018)
- 2 I find it annoying when people eat smelly foods on public transport. L4
- 3 It was annoying. He talked about you so much. The Fault in Our Stars (2014)
- 4 I'm sure that must be very annoying. L17 Super 8 (2011)

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/rɪ'si:və/

receiver n.

- 1 [Story]: pick up / hang up + receiver
- 2 As soon as I picked up the receiver, someone rang the bell. L14 & L51
- 3 Please, don't hang up the receiver.
- 4 He hung up the receiver and went out. L25

/dɪ'smeɪ/

dismay v.

- a feeling of unhappiness and disappointment
- 1 be dismayed to do sth.
 - 2 I was dismayed to learn that she had failed again.
 - 3 They were dismayed to find that the ferry had already left. L14

/rɪkəgnəɪz/

recognize v.

- 1 recognize the voice (of sb.)
- 2 He recognized the voice of the old man. L28 who L31 used to L4 work for the L37 government.
- 3 Leo recognized the voice of that girl (who lived across the street). L28
- 4 Can you recognize my voice?

/pə'sweɪd/

persuade v.

- 1 persuade sb. (not) to do sth.
- 2 I don't think I'll persuade you at all. Manhunter (1986)
- 3 He's trying to persuade him to stay and help him. L7
- 4 Do you really think you can persuade him? The Day the Earth Stood Still (2008)

/mes/

mess n.

- 1 What a mess!
- 2 such a mess....
- 3 Because our yard is such a mess.
- Flipped (2010)
- 4 That's why the company's such a mess.
The Girl with the Dragon Tattoo (2011)
- 5 I'm sorry I caused such a mess. L53 Fletch Lives (1989)

/'dɔ:nɒb/

doorknob n.

- 1 I hit my head on a doorknob.
- 2 did/how/who...
- 3 In his spare time, he likes to collect doorknobs.
L52
- 4 I prefer buying this doorknob to using that old one. L50

/saɪn/

sign v.

- 1 Sign here.
- 2 sign for sth.
- 3 Will you sign for this?
- 4 He needs you to sign for it.
Wall Street (1987)
- 5 The postman asked me to sign for the parcel.
L11 & L7

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'redʒɪstə/

register v.

- 1 a registered letter
- 2 sign for a registered letter....
- 3 [Story]: He wanted me to sign for a registered letter.
- 4 did/who/what/when...

- stick to the plan
- put my finger on it
- point the finger at
- be dismayed to do sth.
- recognize the voice (of sb.)
- persuade sb. (not) to do sth.
- What a mess!
- such a mess
- Sign here.
- sign for sth.
- a registered letter

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

54 Story+Expressions

- send sb. to sp.
- decide to do sth.
- be busy doing sth.
- be covered with sth.
- take sb. st. to do sth.
- hang up
- What a mess!
- sign for sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/gəʊld/ /maɪn/
gold n. mine n.

- 1 own + a gold mine
- 2 They love money. Pretend like you own a gold mine... Titanic (1997)
- 3 I own a gold mine.
- 4 Do you own a gold mine?
- 5 why/who...
- 6 He's like a gold mine. Spun (2002)

/'treʒər/
treasure n.

- 1 a treasure map ...
- 2 He drew a treasure map so he could find them again. Stand by Me (1986)
- 3 hide/bury/steal/search/find/get + treasure
- 4 Let's stick to the plan and find the treasure. L54
- 5 I want to know where the treasure is. L39

/ri'veɪlər/
revealer n. reveal v.

- 1 It is called a revealer. L10
- 2 Is it called a revealer?
- 3 why/what...
- 4 Leo persuaded me not to buy that revealer. L54
- 5 Please, sign for this revealer. L54

/ɪn'vent/
invent v. invention n.

- 1 The “Revealer” was invented many years ago. L10
- 2 was/how long ago/when/what/how...
- 3 The “Revealer” must have been invented by Leo many years ago. L21
- 4 Who invented this?
- 5 Did you invent this? Van Helsing (2004)

/dɪ'tekt/
detect v. detective n.

- 1 [Story]: The “Revealer” has been used to detect gold.
- 2 has/what/why...
- 3 He saved up for years to buy this “Revealer” that can detect gold. L49

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/'beri/
bury v.

- 1 She buried her dog in the garden last month. L1
- 2 did/who/what/where/when...
- 3 Instead of throwing it away, she buried it in the ground. L20 L53
- 4 Her boyfriend helped her to bury the dog in the ground. L52

/keɪv/
cave n.

- 1 in a cave...
- 2 There is some buried treasure in that cave.
- 3 We're gonna live in this cave for a long time, so maybe we should get it in order. L52
- 4 It takes him three days to get out of the cave. L50

/'seɪʃə/
seashore n.

- 1 near the seashore...
- 2 There is a cave near the seashore. NCE1 L25
- 3 We used to go to the seashore every summer. L31
- 4 Let's go to the seashore and have a nice weekend.

/'paɪrət/
pirate n.

- 1 But I don't like pirate stories. The Fall (2006)
- 2 I like pirate stories.
- 3 Do you like pirate stories?
- 4 Leo loves reading pirate stories.
- 5 does/why/who/what...

/ɑ:m/
arm v.

- arm sb./sth. with sth. = sb. be armed with sth.
- 1 Armed with a bucket and a mop, I started washing the floor. L49
 - 2 [Story]: Armed with the new machine, a search party went into the cave...
 - 3 He armed the robot with a dagger.
 - 4 The government armed the soldiers.

/soɪl/ **soil n.**

- 1 in dry soil...
2 These plants grow well in dry soil.
3 do/what/how...
4 There are a lot of worms in the soil. NCE1 L25
5 bury + in the soil ...

/'ent्रəns/ **entrance n.**

- 1 find / miss + entrance
2 I can't find the entrance.
3 Why can't you find the entrance?
4 Where's the entrance? Right here! Little Miss Sunshine (2006)
5 Don't miss the entrance.
6 He was dismayed to find out that they miss the entrance. L54

/'faɪnəli/ **finally adv.**

- 1 Finally, she recognized the voice of the man (who repaired her washing machine yesterday.) L54
2 Finally, she persuaded her husband not to sign for the parcel. L54

/'wɜːθləs/ **worthless adj.**

- 1 I've never felt so worthless in my entire life. Mother and Child (2009)
2 You're worthless.
3 I'm not worthless.

/'θʌrəfli/ **thoroughly adv.**

- completely, very much
1 We enjoyed it thoroughly. The Hours (2002)
2 [Story]: The party searched the whole cave thoroughly.
3 did/what/who/how/when...
4 I searched his room thoroughly last night.
5 did/what/who/how/when...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/trʌŋk/ **trunk n.**

- 1 They left something for you in the trunk! Take a look. A Bronx Tale (1993)
2 Where do you find this empty tin trunk?
3 v. + trunk...

/'kɒnfɪdənt/ **confident adj.**

- 1 sb. be confident that ...+句子
2 I'm confident that they will stick to the plan. L54
3 Leo is confident that they will return this to him. L45

/'væljʊ:/ **value n.**

- 1 something of value....
2 I have something to give you, something of value. Words and Pictures (2013)
3 It might contain something of value. L19

- own + a gold mine
- a treasure map
- in a cave
- near/to the seashore
- pirate stories
- arm sb./sth. with sth. =
- sb. be armed with sth. in dry soil
- find / miss + entrance
- You're worthless.
- I'm not worthless.
- car trunk
- sb. be confident that ...+句子
- something of value

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

55 Grammar

would do VS used to do

L31: used to do sth. would 过去重复发生的动作

异1: 过去状态(past state)只用 used to do

1. This sort of novel used to be very popular.
2. I used to have long hair.
3. He used to be the head of a very large business company.

异2: used to do 暗含现在不发生了

1. He used to/would bring me little presents.

异3: 用used to do 而非 would 谈论[经常]且[重要]的[习惯行为]。 — Michael Swan “Practical English Usage”

1. Robert used to play a lot of football.
2. I used to smoke.
3. I would smoke. ???

注意:

1. 并不很重要
2. 大量输入提升语感
3. 语法书和人们使用习惯的区别

would do VS used to do

L31: used to do sth. would 过去重复发生的动作

同:

1. When Leo was angry, he would always walk out of the room.
2. I used to live near my work and would always get home early.

where whose

定从 参考L28

where/whose 引导定从

- The hotel wasn't very clean.
- We stayed there.
- The hotel (where we stayed) wasn't very clean.

where/whose 引导定从

- I recently went back to the town.
- I was born in that town.
- I recently went back to the town (where I was born).

where/whose 引导定从

- I want to live in the country.
- There is plenty of sunshine in that country.
- I want to live in the country where there is plenty of sunshine.

where/whose 引导定从

- The place (where we spent our holidays) was really beautiful.
- The place was really beautiful.
- We spent out holiday there.

where/whose 引导定从

- A cemetery is a place where people are buried.
- I can't remember the name of the garage where we had the car repaired .
- Ann bought a dress which didn't fit her, so she took it back to the shop where Ann bought it.

where/whose 引导定从

Yellow Submarine

In the town where I was born, Lived a man who sailed the sea.
And he told us of his life,
In the land of submarines.

where/whose 引导定从

I have a dream (that my four little children will one day live in a nation [where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character]).

我梦想有一天，我的四个孩子将在一个不是以他们的肤色，而是以他们的品格优劣来评价他们的国度里生活。

where/whose 引导定从

- We helped some people.
- Their car had broken down.
- We helped some people whose car had broken down.

where/whose 引导定从

- I met a man.
- His wife is an English teacher.
- I met a man whose wife is an English teacher.

where/whose 引导定从

An orphan is a child whose parents are dead.

where/whose 引导定从

- I met a man.
- He knows you.
- I met a man who knows you.
- I met a man.
- His sister knows you.
- I met a man whose sister knows you.

where/whose 引导定从

- A man (whose accomplishments in South Africa... will always be remembered). Gandhi (1982)
- ...from a guy whose wife is missing. Gone Girl (2014)
- A child whose mother and father have been killed. Gandhi (1982)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

55 Story+Expressions

- dreams come true...
- be used to do sth.
- fairly soon...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

be used to do sth.

This is used to make bread.
Is this used to make bread?
what/why/how...

fairly soon / certain

I'm fairly certain that + 句子
I'm fairly confident that + 句子
It's been a fairly interesting day so far.
The Rock (1996)
Well, it's a fairly new relationship,
so we spend a lot of time together.
Going in Style (2017)

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/saʊnd/***sound** **n. v.**

- 1 hear / make + sound
 2 If you hear anyone outside, don't make a sound. L16 Michael Collins (1996)
 3 When she opened her mouth she couldn't make a sound. L7
 4 I heard the sound of his voice. Fearless (1993)
 5 did/who/when/how...

*/ɪk'saɪtmənt/***excitement** **n.**

- 1 [Story]: There was a great deal of excitement.
 2 was/why...
 3 I'm gonna miss the excitement...
 As Good as It Gets (1997)
 4 I have had enough excitement.
 Woman in Gold (2015)

*/'hænsəm/***handsome** **adj. + n.**

- 1 We all prefer to have dinner with that handsome captain. L50
 2 I'm fairly confident that I can recognize the voice of that handsome man. L55 L54
 3 I want to pay that handsome man a visit. L51

Rolls-Royce Benz*/wi:l/***wheel** **n.**

- 1 This car has only three wheels.
 2 does/why/how many wheels...
 3 Could you sign for the wheels? L54
 4 Come here, help me to repair these wheels. L52

*/ɪk'spləʊd/ /ɪk'spləʊzən/***explode** **v. explosion** **n. cn.**

- 1 What caused the explosion?
 2 It was damaged by an explosion three days ago. L10
 3 We heard an explosion.
 4 did/when/who/what...
 5 She went on an excursion by herself two nights before the explosion. L50

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/kɔ:s/***course** **n.**

- 1 on the course ...
 2 There was an explosion on the course.
 3 [Story]: Many of the cars broke down on the course.
 4 how many/did/where/why....
 5 He dreamed of driving his own car on that course for years. L38

*/raɪvəl/***rival** **n.**

- 1 I think he saw us as rivals. The World's End
 2 I have so many rivals.
 The Age of Innocence (1993)
 3 Your biggest rival is yourself.
 4 India's biggest rival, China, continues to make ... The Economist

*/spi:d/ /sped/***speed - sped** **v.**

- 1 speed it/things/this up
 2 And I need you to speed things up.
 In the Loop (2009)
 3 I think I can speed this up. A Good Year (2006)
 4 There might be a way to speed this up. Kiss of the Spider Woman (1985)
 5 Let's try to speed this thing up. Fever Pitch (2005)

*/daʊn'hɪl/***downhill** **adv.**

- 1 [Story]: It sped downhill at the end of the race.
 2 did/why/what/when...
 3 After that, things started to go downhill.
 Vamps (2012)
 4 After his wife died, his health started to go downhill.

单词 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

- make a sound
- hear a sound
- on the course
- speed it/things/this up
- go downhill

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

56 Story+Expressions

- a great deal of ...+不可数
- break down
- a be different from b.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

a great deal of ...+不可数

He realized that he had lost a great deal of money. L20

It is easy for him to make a great deal of money every day. L32

He returned a great deal of money to me last night. L45

a be different from b.

I'm different from you. Her (2013)

A machine is different from a person.

The Imitation Game (2014)

No one could account for the fact that he is so different from his twin brother. L46

break down

My car broke down.

Did your car break down? Bagdad

Cafe (1987) When/whose/why...

We wanna drive to London. But we can't.

Because our car broke down.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'mædəm/***madam n.**

- 1 Madam, I don't know what to say. L50
Brazil (1985)
- 2 Madam, let me help you with that.
This Boy's Life (1993)
- 3 Did you hear the sound, madam? L56
- 4 I'm sorry, madam, but we need to speed things up. L56

*/dʒi:nz/***jeans n.**

- 1 The man who's wearing jeans is our captain.
- 2 Sir, you can't wear jeans here.
- 3 They bought jeans last week.
- 4 did/when/who/what...
- 5 He's selling jeans in that market.
- 6 is/who/where...

*/'hezɪteɪt/***hesitate v.****hesitate to do sth.**

- 1 hesitate for a moment / second...
- 2 She hesitated for a second before opening the door. L49? L20?
- 3 If there's anything that we can do, please don't hesitate to tell us. Limitless (2011)
- 4 Well, listen, if there's anything I can do, don't hesitate to call. Frailty (2001)

*/sɜ:v/***serve v.**

- 1 We don't serve biscuits. Sling Blade (1996)
- 2 Why don't you serve biscuits?
- 3 [Story]: The man who served her didn't like her.
- 4 why didn't / who ...

*/'skɔ:nfəli/***scornfully adv.**

- 1 ask / laugh / look at / said
- 2 "Oh, great" he said scornfully.
- 3 They looked at each other scornfully.
- 4 did/who/how/why...
- 5 "Can he do that?" he asked scornfully.
- 6 look down on sb.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/'pʌnɪʃ/***punish v.**

- 1 He's just trying to punish me. Crazy, Stupid, Love. (2011)
- 2 I'm not going to punish you. Lady Bird (2017)
- 3 You can't punish me for something I did years before we even met.
Love, Wedding, Marriage (2011)

*/fɜ:/***fur n.**

- 1 Could you recognize the voice of the man who sold you the fur coat yesterday. L54
- 2 My boyfriend persuaded me not to buy that fur coat last night. L54.
- 3 In her spare time, she likes to wear her coat standing in front of the mirror. L52

*/'eɪgə/***eager adj.****be eager to do sth.**

- 1 He's eager to help me to move into my new house. L52
- 2 My car broke down yesterday and he is eager to repair it for me. L56
- 3 I'm fairly confident that he's eager to do that. L55

- **hesitate to do sth.**
- **be eager to do sth.**
- **ask / laugh / look at / said + scornfully**
- **look down on sb.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

57 Grammar

the way (that) ...
[informal style] –

1. The assistant who served her did not (like) the way she was dressed.
2. I don't like the way (that) you talk to me.
3. We want to know the way (in which) you learn new words.

...but I don't need to do it the way you did...or my father.

L. A. Confidential (1997)

Well, I like the way you talk.

Sling Blade (1996)

I like the way you say things.

Call Me by Your Name (2017)

What, are you crazy? I see the way you look at me, Manolo.

Scarface (1983)

Because I love the way you look at the world.

Her (2013)

Come on. You want me to stay because of the way
you feel about me.

Star Wars: Episode V – The Empire Strikes Back (1980)

If you don't want to be caught, you're going to have to
change the way you think.

Vigil (1984)

I'm tired of the way you decide how the world is gonna run.

The Judge (2014)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

57 Story+Expressions

- ask to do sth.
- be dressed in ...
- seek out
- make sb. do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

ask to do sth...

I asked to see his ID. Get Out (2017)

They asked to see my records.

Wall Street (1987)

He just came in and asked to use the bathroom. Clerks (1994)

She asked to take some and I gave her some. Coherence (2013)

be dressed in...

The woman was dressed in a fur coat.

was/who/why...

The man is dressed in blue.

seek out

[Story]: She sought out the rude assistant.

did/why/who/when...

His parents sought out the best doctor for him.

While he was at the library, Steve decided to seek out some information.

L22

make sb. do sth.

Don't make me do this.

You can't make me speed this up. L56

My son makes me tell him a pirate story every night. L55

My mom made me get my new room in order yesterday. L52

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'blesɪŋ/***blessing n. bless v.**

- 1 It was a blessing that no one was killed in the accident. L10
 2 It's a blessing that nobody was in the house at the time.
 3 It's a blessing that your children live so near.

*/'blesɪŋ/ /dɪs'gaɪz/***blessing n. disguise n.**

- 1 a blessing in disguise :an apparent misfortune that eventually has good results.
 2 This will work, you'll see. I'm certain it's a blessing in disguise.
 3 You know, changing jobs can be a blessing in disguise. Frenzy (1972) L20
 4 This may be a blessing in disguise. L19

*/taɪni/***tiny adj.**

extremely small

- 1 I persuaded my girlfriend not to buy that tiny cat last week. L54
 2 This tiny little thing solved all my problems. L53 3 We found a tiny beautiful thing near the seashore. L55

*/pə'zes/***possess v.+power/knowledge/skill**

- 1 [Story]: The tiny village possesses a “cursed tree”.
 2 does/what/why...
 3 own/have
 4 All I want are some documents that are in his possession. Extreme Prejudice (1987)
 5 We don't know her plan and the gun is in my possession. Sexy Evil Genius (2013)

*/kə:s:t/***cursed adj. curse v. n.**

- 1 My grandfather thinks this town is cursed. It (2017) L10
 2 It's a curse.
 3 A blessing is different from a curse. L56

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/ɪn'kri:s/***increase v. + risk/number/price**

- 1 This can increase the risks.
 2 can/why/what/how...
 3 Smoking can increase the risk of developing heart disease. L20
 4 Soon Ann asked me if she could increase the lessons to twice a week.
 Mr. Holmes (2015) L39

*/pla:nt/***plant v.**

- 1 plant + tree / ...
 2 My grandfather used to plant potatoes in his courtyard. L31
 3 We were eager to plant vegetables this spring. L57
 4 Don't make me plant anything next year. L57

*/tʃə:tʃ/***church n.**

- 1 go to church 做礼拜/go to the church 去教堂
 2 I prefer to go to church alone. L50
 3 When I was young, my dad forbade me to go to church, for he didn't believe in God. L51&L28
 4 They went to the church together last Monday.
 5 did/where/when/why/who...

*/i:vel/***evil adj. reputation n.**

- 1 have a good/ bad reputation...
 2 They said that Leo had a good reputation.
 3 The new owner has a reputation for honesty.
 4 [Story]: The tree has gained an evil reputation.
 5 has/what/why/how...

/klaɪm/ /'vɪktɪm/

claim v. victim n.

- 1 Is it possible you left it in baggage claim?
 2 claim one's life ...
 3 [Story]: The tree has already claimed a number of victims.
 4 has/what/how...
 5 I refuse to live my life as a victim.
 Euphoria (2017) L9 L31

/'vɪkə/

vicar n.

- 1 The vicar took a taxi to work everyday. L29
 2 The vicar is different from a monk. L56
 3 I'm fairly certain that the new vicar is that man. L55

/sɔ:s/ /'ɪnքəm/

source n. income n.

- 1 source of income / information ...
 2 So you have no source of income?
 American Violet (2008)
 3 Do you have any source of income?
 4 He's your only source of information.
 5 is/who/why...

/trʌŋk/

trunk n.

- 1 But now standing over me she looked like a huge tree trunk. Before Night Falls (2000)
 2 He looked at that tree trunk scornfully and asked us to take it away. L57
 3 There is a tree trunk on the course. L56

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- It is a blessing that ...
- what a blessing
- God bless you
- It's a blessing
- a blessing in disguise
- In one's possession
- Go to church
- Go to the church
- have a good/ bad reputation
- Have a reputation for ...
- baggage claim
- source of income / information

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

58 Grammar

据说

be said to do sth. = it is said that...

- He is the richest man in the world.
- He is said to be the richest man in the world.
- It is said that he is the richest man in the world.

- People say he is a genius.
- He is said to be a genius.
- It's said that he is a genius.

- Cathy works very hard.
- It is said that she works 16 hours a day.
- She is said to work 16 hours a day.

- Cathy loves running.
- It is said that she runs ten miles a day.
- She is said to run ten miles a day.

- The tiny village of Frinley is said to possess a 'cursed tree'.
- It is said that the tiny village of Frinley possesses a 'cursed tree'

He is said to be the wisest man in the universe. Go, find him.
The Last Dragon (1985)

It is said that we humans use only a tiny portion of our brains.
Matilda (1996)

It is said that music... is a bridge between earth and heaven.
The Forbidden Kingdom (2008)

强调句

it is(was)+强调部分+that(who)+剩余部分

My secretary sent the bill to Mr. Harding yesterday.

1. It was my secretary that sent the bill to Mr. Harding yesterday.
2. It was the bill that my secretary sent to Mr. Harding yesterday.
3. It was Mr. Harding that my secretary sent the bill to yesterday.
4. It was yesterday that my secretary sent the bill to Mr. Harding.

Sue sent Jim a present at Christmas.

- ✓ It was Sue that sent Jim a present at Christmas.
- ✓ It was Jim that Sue sent a present at Christmas.
- ✓ It was a present that Sue sent Jim at Christmas.
- ✓ It was at Christmas that Sue sent Jim a present.

My aunt took Peter to London yesterday.

- It was my aunt who took Peter to London yesterday, not my mother.
- It was Peter that my aunt took to London yesterday, not Lucy.
- It was London that my aunt took Peter to yesterday.
- It was yesterday that my aunt took Peter to London.

[Story]: It is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation.

It has gained an evil reputation only in recent years.

- It is the tree that has gained an evil reputation only in recent years.
- It is an evil reputation that it has gained only in recent years.
- It is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation.

- ‘Helen bought the car from Tom.’
- ‘No, it was Tom that bought the car from Helen.’
- ‘No, it was two years ago that Helen bought the car.’
- ‘No, it was Tom that Helen bought the car from.’

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

58 Story+Expressions

- a number of
- sb. point out that...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

a number of

My parents asked me to plant a number of trees this spring.

did/why/who/when/where...

A number of cars broke down on the road. L56

A number of gold coins were found in dry soil. L55

sb. point out that...

She has just pointed out that you missed the entrance. L55

Leo pointed out that we must stick to the plan. L54

He pointed out that it's actually a good idea. L52

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/bɑ:k/***bark v.**

- 1 If the dogs know you, they won't bark at all. L16
 2 Look, a number of dogs are barking at him. L58
 3 It was Leo that the dog barked at, not you. L58
 4 Don't bark at me!

*/pres/***press v.**

- 1 Did you press the button?
 2 why/who/when...
 3 It was Leo that pressed the button. L58
 4 He must have pressed the button. L17
 5 Don't make me press that. L57

*/po:/***paw n.**

- 1 I have been thinking about the paw prints all morning. L52
 2 That dog's paw is so cute that I could hold it all day. L35
 3 When I got home, I was not surprised to see that paw prints were everywhere. L51

*/lætʃ/***latch n.**

- 1 The latch is broken. L10
 2 The dog must have opened the latch, but how? L17
 3 The latch must have been opened by someone, for the dog can't have opened it. L17 L21

*/'ekspə:t/***expert n.**

- 1 become/be an expert at doing sth.
 2 He's an expert at this kind of thing.
 3 I'm an expert at this game.
 Relative Strangers (2006)
 4 I've become an expert at calming down actors.
 Open Windows (2014)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/di'veləp/ /'hæbit/***develop v. habit n.**

- 1 I have a habit of doing that when I get nervous. Flesh and Bone (1993) L7
 2 I have a habit of keeping thing in my car trunk. L55
 3 [Story]: Since then, he has developed another bad habit.
 4 has/who/since when/why...

*/ri'mu:v/***remove v.**

- 1 remove sth. from...
 2 [Story]: Yesterday my husband removed the gate.
 3 did/who/when/why/what...
 4 Will you please remove your handbag from the seat?
 5 The men came to remove the rubbish from the backyard.

- become/be an expert at doing sth.
- have a habit of doing sth.
- remove sth. from...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

59 Grammar

目的状语从句

to
in order to
so as to
so that
in order that

so that 以便; 为了

1. I wrote them down in my diary so that I wouldn't have to remember.
2. Everybody is having a good time here, but I think we should leave you alone... so that you can relax.
3. He wants to move out of his place so that we can live together.
4. Take a seat so that we may continue.
5. I should tell you, so that you don't waste your time... you can't make me angry.
6. Put your name on the top of the paper... so that I know who did such good work.
7. Now, my sisters saved up so that I could go to school and be a teacher.
8. Sometimes we have to leave people behind so that we can go on, so that we can continue to fight.
9. I'd like you to leave so that I can take a bath.
10. You will watch this, so that you will remember.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study—Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

59 Story+Expressions

- complained of ...
- spend st. doing sth.
- train sb. to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

complained of...

Has she complained of a headache?

Now Is Good (2012)

He is said to complain of his boss all the time. [It is said that ...] L58

It was Lucy that complained of his boss at the party last night. L58

spend st. doing sth.

He spent three years planting these trees.

They spent three years looking for that treasure map. L55

Leo spent three years living in a cave.
L55

did/why/who/...

train sb. to do sth.

They trained you to look down on me.

L57

It is said that someone trained Leo to teach English. L58

They trained a number of dogs to do this. L58

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'fju:tʃə/***future n.**

1 in the future...

2 I think you might need to listen to this again in the future. 1985 (2018) L19 L41

3 I want to work for that company in the future.

L4

4 We hope to see you again in the future. L36

*/feə/***fair n. adj.**

1 [Story]: at a village fair...

2 Can you return this to me at that village fair tomorrow? L45

3 No one could account for the fact everything at that village fair is much more expensive. L46

4 I heard him singing at a village fair last week. L47

*/'fɔ:tʃən/ /'telə/***fortune-teller n.**

1 It is said that the fortune-teller at the village fair can tell you everything you don't even know about yourself. L58

2 It was at the village fair that I met the fortune-teller last week. L58

3 A number of "fortune-tellers" were caught by the police last month. L58

*/'krɪstəl/***crystal n.**

1 [Story]: crystal ball...

2 I got this crystal ball from a fortune-teller at a village fair.

3 did/where/who/what/when...

4 Let me be crystal clear. Running Scared (2006)

5 I think everything's crystal clear. L39

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/rɪ'læʃən/***relation n.**

1 Your father is her nearest relation. Downton Abbey (2019)

2 [Story]: a relation of yours...

3 He left work early so that he could pick up a relation of his at the train station. L60

4 did/why/when...

*/ɪm'peɪʃəntli/***impatiently adv. + v.**

1 "Can you give me a lift" he asked impatiently. L14

2 He waited impatiently at the village fair.

3 did/why/who/where...

4 You have a habit of asking for help impatiently. L59

- in the future
- at a village fair
- crystal clear
- a relation of yours

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

60 Grammar

the moment
as soon as

Everything stops the moment she walks in the room.

I recognized her the moment I saw her.

I fell in love with you the moment I saw you.

The moment you tell anyone about it,
your life is absolutely worthless.
Blood Diamond (2006)

You ask God for help, and I'll stop the
moment he shows up.
The Count of Monte Cristo (2002)

I promise you faithfully I shall go the
moment I have finished this biscuit.
Present Laughter (2017)

I'll call you the moment I know anything.
Path to War (2002)

If you'll have a seat, I'll let you know
the moment it arrives.
House of Games (1987)

I feel in love with him the moment I
held him.
A Night Without Armor (2017)

I regretted it the moment it happened.
Glass Jaw (2018)
the moment + 时间状语从句

主将从现

If it rains tomorrow we shall stay at
home.

The moment he arrives, I shall let you
know.

I shall wait here until he comes.

As soon as the rain stops, we shall go
out.

You must finish your dinner before
you leave the table.

We'll go into the living room after we
finish dinner.

I'll give him the message when he
returns.

中级红皮书Unit25

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'telɪsko:p/***Hubble n. telescope n.**

- 1 The moment you buy this telescope, you will regret it. L60
 2 In the future, I will buy you a telescope. L60
 3 He soon became an expert at fixing telescope. L59

*/ləʊntʃ/***launch v.**

- 1 [Story]: The Hubble telescope was launched... on April 20, 1990. L10
 2 was/what/why/when...
 3 The telescope has already been launched.
 4 The telescope will be launched next week.

*/speɪs/***space n. outer space**

- 1 The NASA decided to launch the telescope into outer space. L22
 2 did/why/when/what...
 3 Listen, I have a friend who's not only a doctor, but he's interested in outer space.
 Slaughterhouse-Five (1972) L28 L25 L20

/næsə/ **NASA n.***/'bɪljən/***billion n. million n.**

- 1 a billion dollars...
 2 It is said that the telescope is worth a billion dollars. L58
 3 The telescope is said to be worth a billion dollars. L58
 4 Are you telling me that a relation of yours has got a billion dollars? L60

*/'fɔlti/***faulty adj.**

- 1 Even though I know this is faulty, I still have to use it.
 2 I told you it was faulty. L39
 3 It is my car that's faulty, not Leo's. L58

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/'æstrənɔ:t/***astronaut n.**

- 1 I saw that famous astronaut at the village fair last weekend. L60
 2 The astronaut spent three years training himself to cook. L59
 3 The astronaut was eager to go home. L57

*/'ʃʌtəl / ə'n'de'vel/***shuttle n. Endeavour n.**

- 1 shuttle bus
 2 Can you tell me where the shuttle bus is? L39
 3 It is said that there aren't any shuttle buses here. L58

*/rəʊbɒt / ə:m/***robot-arm**

- 1 I prefer to use a real person rather than a robot-arm. L50
 2 The robot-arm smashed everything to pieces. L49
 3 He admitted that he broke the robot-arm. L46

*/græb/***grab v.**

- 1 I was thinking we should go grab a coffee. Warrior (2011)
 2 Maybe we can grab a beer next week. Sundowners (2017)
 3 They've actually got a bar there, so I always grab a beer after my workout. Hall Pass (2011)
 4 You're gonna grab the glasses and I'm gonna get the wine. Before Sunrise (1995)

/'ætmosfɪə/
atmosphere n.

1 [Story]: The telescope is above the earth's atmosphere.

2 is/where/what/why...

3 Do you like the atmosphere here?

4 Why don't you like the atmosphere here?

/'dɪstənt/ /'gælæksi/
distant adj. galaxy n.

1 It occurred to me that we could see the distant galaxy through this telescope. L46

2 How can we have a glimpse of the distant galaxy? L42

3 You needn't have told me that this is a picture of the distant galaxy. L41

/'ju:nɪvɜ:s/
universe n.

1 What do you know about the universe?

2 He spent years learning things about universe.
L59

3 I'm fairly certain that he know nothing about the universe. L55

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'eɪgl/
eagle eye n.

1 This eagle eye is worthless. L55

2 Let's stick to the plan and fix the eagle eye first. L54

3 In his spare time, he likes to learn how the eagle eye works. L52

- grab a beer/coffee

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

61 Grammar

将来完成进行时
will be doing L13
will have done L37
have been doing L52
will have been doing L61

将来完成进行时

have been doing L52

will have been doing L61

一个 v. 持续或重复到将来

I'm retiring this fall.

By then I'll have been teaching for 30 years.

People will have been standing in the snow for
more than three hours wait, it's going to snow?
Love at the Thanksgiving Day Parade (2012)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

61 Story+Expressions

- right from the start

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

right from the start

Right from the start, he complained of his work and his boss. L59

My mom forbade me to watch TV from Monday to Friday, right from the start. L51

Right from the start, I can't tell the difference between these two. L42

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/kən'trəʊl/***control n. v.**

- 1 The moment you get it under control, we'll talk.
L60
2 It is said that she can always get everything under control. L58
3 I'm at the baggage claim, and everything's under control. L58

*/sməʊk/***smoke n. v.**

- 1 Do you smoke? / Smoking Area
2 What's that smell? Oh, sorry, I've been smoking here. L52
3 Every inch of this room smelt terrible last night, please don't ever smoke in the room again. L52
4 The room is full of smoke. L7

*/'dezəleɪt/***desolate adj.**

- 1 desolate place...
2 It's obvious that there's no one in this desolate place. L51
3 I prefer to travel to a desolate place all by myself. L50
4 I'm tired of living in this desolate place. L49

*/'θretn/***threaten v.**

- 1 threaten sb. with sth.
2 The man threaten him with a knife.
3 It's said that you threaten him with the police. L58
4 You don't have to threaten me. L17
5 threaten to do sth.
6 I have to threaten to call his wife.
Dream Lover (1993)

*/sə'rəʊndɪŋ/***surrounding adj.**

- 1 + n. area / villages / towns
2 Although this place is completely safe, the surrounding area of London is not.
3 I've been checking the surrounding area for three hours. L52
4 If we control this place, we'll control the whole surrounding area. L16

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/dɪ'strʌkʃən/***destruction n.**

- 1 [Story]: The hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction.
2 did/why/what/how...
3 The destruction came from the surrounding hills. did/where/why...
4 He told me a story of destruction. L27

*/flʌd/***flood n.**

- 1 [Story]: The rain can cause serious floods.
2 can/why/what/how...
3 It's you who saved my life from the floods, not him. L58
4 They trained their kids to survive from the floods. L59
5 We must learn how to swim so that we could survive from the floods. L59

*/əʊθɔːrəti/***authority n.**

- 1 I don't have the authority to do that.
The Milagro Beanfield War (1988)
2 I may not have the authority to order you to get out of here. L19 L43
3 James! You have the authority to make a decision! Eye in the Sky (2015) L3
4 The authorities won't allow that to happen.

*/gra:s/ /si:d/***grass-seed n.**

- 1 The moment you bought these grass seeds, trust me, you'll regret it. L60
2 After buying these grass seeds, Leo regretted it. L49
3 Leo loves collecting all kinds of grass seeds. L50

/spreɪ/

spray v.

- 1 They sprayed again last night. Short Cuts (1993) 2 did/why/when/what...
 3 The authorities sprayed the grass-seed in the surrounding area.
 4 did/who/what/why/when...
 5 They're all sprayed with ice cold water. L10

/'kwɒntəti/

quantity n.

- 1 She pointed out that he had a large quantity of gold. L58
 2 He loves buying large quantity of grass seeds. does/who/why/what...
 3 They found a small quantity of gold in the cave near the beach last weekend.
 4 did/where/how/who/when...

/ru:t/

root n. take root

- 1 If the seeds are good, they'll take root.
 Oh, God! (1977) L16
 2 The grass seeds are not allowed to take root in my garden. L10
 3 We hope that the orange trees will take root.

/'sentʃəri/

century n.

- 1 For centuries, women were not allowed to work outside their home. L10
 2 For centuries, people who works for banks get a good salary. L11
 3 For centuries, these people go on a journey by themselves when they are eighteen.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/pætʃ/

patch n.

- 1 His car hit a patch of ice and went into a tree. L25
 2 Don't stand on that little patch of grass so that... L59
 3 They found a patch of grass in the winter. How wonderful is that!

/'blækən/

blacken v.

- 1 [Story]: Patches of green had begun to appear in the blackened soil.
 2 had/where/why/what...
 3 Leo had a blackened finger. did/who/why...
 4 He was eager to see the blackened soil near the village. L57
 5 Smoke had blackened the walls. had/what/why...

- **get it under control**
- **be under control**
- **threaten sb. with sth.**
- **threaten to do sth.**
- **have the authority to do sth.**
- **a large/ small quantity of sth.**
- **take root**
- **for centuries**
- **a patch of sth.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

62 Grammar

过去完成进行时

have been doing... L52

will have been doing... L61

had been doing...

过去完成进行时

肯定句: 主+had been doing...

否定句: 主+had not been doing...

一般疑问句: Had 主 been doing...?

用法: 现在完成进行时的过去时

用法一: 过去A进行的v. (结束)对过去B有
影响。

- Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining but the ground was very wet.
- It had been raining.

She had been crying. Her eyes were red.

She had been running. She was out of breath.

I had been working all day.

When I got home, I was very tired.

用法二: 过去A进行的v.持续或重复到过去B

- At last the bus came.
 - I'd been waiting for 20 minutes.
- By 2020, I had been teaching English for 9 years. Past A 2020 Now

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

62 Story+Expressions

- A short time before
- for miles around
- In place of...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

A short time before

A short time before, Leo removed the gate. L59

A short time before, you threatened me with a gun. L61

Although, I had lunch a short time before, still, I am very hungry right now.

for/from miles around

It's the only place to get gas for miles around here.

People used to come from miles around to buy our pictures. L31

There aren't any hotels for miles around here.

In place of...

"If I don't go, who's gonna go in place of me?" That's what he said.

The Clique (2008) L16

In place of beer, can you grab a coffee for me? L61

In place of my dad, my wife trained our dog to open the gate. L59

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'sɜ:kəl/***circle n.**

- 1 a large circle of friends...
- 2 When I was young, my parents would invite their small circle of friends. L55
- 3 We don't have the same circle of friends.
- 4 Why don't you have the same circle of friends? You stay together all the time.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/əd'maɪər/***admire v.**

- 1 admire sb. for sth/doing sth...
- 2 I admire you for that. Unforgiven (1992)
- 3 I really admire you for the work (you do). Beyond Borders (2003)
- 4 I admire you for caring so much.

*/kloʊz/***close adj.**

- 1 close friend
- 2 We were close. Were you close? why weren't ...
- 3 We had been working together for years before we became very close friends. L62
- 4 For centuries close circle of friends almost always lived together, but things have changed now. L62

*/'wedɪŋ/***wedding n.**

- 1 It was a wonderful wedding, wasn't it?
- 2 It's too late to ask her for help with my wedding.
- 3 wedding gift/present/ring
- 4 I'll buy you a wedding present.
- 5 Don't you threaten me with my wedding ring. L62

*/rɪ'seփən/***reception n.**

- 1 I will see you at the reception.
- 2 Excuse me, where is the reception?
- 3 I saw them fighting at the reception last night. L35
- 4 did/who/why/where/when...

*/sɔ:t/***sort n.**

- 1 what sort of / what kind of ...
- 2 What sort of questions will they ask? Beautiful Thing (1996)
- 3 What sort of a life would I have without you? Maurice (1987)
- 4 all sorts of / all kinds of ...
- 5 I tell him all sorts of things about you.

- a large circle of friends
- admire sb. for sth/doing sth.
- close friend
- at the reception
- what sort of / what kind of...
- all sorts of / all kinds of...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

63 Grammar

方式状语从句

as: in the way or manner that

按照...方式

like

as if

as though

the way...

方式状语从句

as: in the way or manner that

按照...方式

1. Jeremy was a little disappointed by
this but he did as his daughter asked.

2. When in Roma, do as the Romans do.
3. We must do as the doctor tells us.

主谓宾定状补同?

She must have more certainty than I
did as a child. L31

Queen of Katwe (2016)

By day, the children did as they were told.
Come Away (2020)

as: in the way or manner that

You'll do as I say and ask no questions.
L.A. Confidential (1997)

She said unless I did as they asked,
they would kill Lucy.

Sharpe's Battle (1995)

Please, let me do as this Egyptian
suggests. Joseph (1995)

If you value his life, I suggest everyone
does as they're told.

Now do as I told you.
A Simple Wish (1997)

Miss Peregrine's Home for Peculiar
Children (2016)

I did as Dracula instructed. I wrote
three letters.
Bram Stoker's Dracula (1992)

Carter always does as he's told. He's
a good boy.
Raising Cain (1992)

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

63 Story+Expressions

- sense of humour/humor
- make a speech
- a large number of...
- on the way home

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

sense of humour/humor

I like people with a sense of humour.
He's got a sense of humor.

Anyone (who has a sense of humor) is always very popular at any parties. L28

make a speech

I want to make a speech at your wedding.
He succeeded in making a speech at that wedding. L36
He was so nervous that he didn't even make a speech at his own wedding. L35

a large number of...

I know that they fired a large number of people.

A large number of magazines were sold last week. L10

They must have sold a large number of magazines last week. L17

on the way home

On the way home, he was still busy working. L40
On the way home, they went through the park. L44
On the way home, it occurred to him that he didn't close the office door. L46

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'tʌnəl/***tunnel n.**

1 in the tunnel...

2 It got colder when we were in the tunnel.

3 I just saw something moving in that tunnel. L35

4 When he was young, he used to live in the tunnel. L31

*/pɔ:t/***port n.**

1 Leo will be waiting for you at the port. L31

2 The man who works at the port has a large circle of friends. L28 L63

3 One of my closest friends had been working at the port for ten years before he met his wife. L62

*/'ventɪleɪt/ /vɛntɪ'læfən/***ventilate v. ventilation n.**

1 Open the window and ventilate the room.

2 Ventilation system...

3 What sort of ventilation system do you have here? L63

4 I have been selling ventilation system to government for ten years. L52

*/'tʃɪmni/***chimney n.**

1 I have been cleaning the chimney since 9. L52

2 He must have been cleaning the chimney yesterday afternoon. L17

3 We need to build a chimney so that the smoke can go out. L59

4 We must remove the chimney from your house.

*/'levl/***sea level**

1 above/below sea level...

2 The village is 1,000 meters above sea level.

3 It is said that most of the great cities are near sea level. L58

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/'dʌbləl/***double adj. v.**

1 We could double our money.

2 I am going to double your salary.

3 They make all sorts of good double meat burgers. L63

4 double check ...

5 We need to double check all his work.

*/fɪər/***fear v. n.**

1 That's is why they fear us.

2 Why do you fear the past? The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring (2001)

3 Sb. fear that + 句子

4 I fear that I will never see it again.

5 I fear that he won't be able to walk again. L43

*/ɪn'veɪzən/***invasion n.**

1 They had been preparing all night before the invasion started. L62

2 He was killed in the invasion. L10

3 Why are they talking about the invasion?

4 A short time before, the invasion began. L62

*/ə'fɪsɪəli/***officially adv.**

1 There's nothing officially wrong with it.

Ed Wood (1994)

2 Leo officially offered me a job tonight.

3 did/who/why/when...

4 The park will be officially opened next weekend. L10

/kə'nekt/
connect v.

- 1 Can I connect my printer to your computer?
2 I know this is all connected to you. L15
3 Leo has a large circle of friends and they are all connected with each other. L63

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/juə'rə'piən/ /'kɔntɪnənt/
European adj. n. continent n.

- 1 [Story]: The Channel Tunnel connected Britain to the European continent.
2 did/how/what ...
3 They are European.
4 I like European girls. Underbelly Files: Tell Them Lucifer Was Here (2011)
5 Will I ever return to that continent I so love? Mountains of the Moon (1990)

- **in the tunnel**
- **above/below sea level**
- **double check**
- **sb. fear that + 句子**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

64 Grammar

虚拟语气 L40

结构

If+did/were,

主 + would/should/could/might do.

did 并非表示过去

If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

If I knew them better, I might invite them to dinner.

含义

1. if从句中v.与现在事实相反

2. 说话人认为, if 从句中 v. 发生的几率非常低

If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

If I knew them better, I might invite them to dinner.

It's cold. If I were you, I would put my coat on.

虚拟语气: 与过去事实相反

- Police: Why didn't you shout for help when you were robbed of your watch.
- Man: If I had opened (open) my mouth, they would have found (find) my four gold teeth. That would be much worse.

虚拟语气 L64

结构: If 主 had done..., 主 would/could/ might/should + have done.

L64 与过去事实相反

- I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. If I had seen you, of course, I would have said hello.
- I didn't go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired.
- If I'd gone to the party last night, I would have met lots of people.

I don't know what I would have done if you hadn't come back.

Falcon Song (2014)

If I'd known how much fun it would be to work with a partner, I would have done it years ago.

The Incredible Burt Wonderstone (2013)

It would have helped if you'd saved my son.

The Entitled (2011)

虚拟语气 L64

结构: If 主 had done..., 主 would/could/ might/should + have done.

L64 与过去事实相反

If you could have made (=If you had been able to make)

If you could have

spoken to me the first time in the jungle, what would you have said? Oh!
The Jungle Book (1994)

If you could have done (=If you had been able to do)

If I could have stayed down there, I would have, believe me.
The Spectacular Now (2013)

If you could have done (=If you had been able to do)

You know, Jammy, if I could have done anything, I would have been a painter.
Trespass Against Us (2016)

对比

L40 VS L64

虚拟语气

L40: If +did/were,

主 + would/should/could/might do.

L64: If 主 had done..., 主 would have done.

I'm not hungry.

If I was hungry, I would eat something.

I wasn't hungry,

If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something.

注意!

■规则与例外

■1990s less than 25% of if ... follow the traditional 123.

■It may not strictly speaking be wrong.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

64 Story+Expressions

if 真实条件句

If jack didn't come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.
If you didn't study English at school, you won't understand this book.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

suggest that +句子

suggest that...should do

考试:

Her uncle suggested that she (should) get a job in a bank.

He suggests that she get a job in a bank.

He suggested that she get a job in a bank.

实际应用:

Her uncle suggests that she gets a job in a bank.

He suggested that she got a job in a bank.

- it is possible to do sth. ...
- a serve as b
- put forward a plan...
- solve the problem of a...

it is possible to do sth. ...

L48 It is impossible for sb. to do sth. ...
Would it be possible to have a drink of water? Barry Lyndon (1975)
It's possible to learn this all by yourself.
Is it possible to get it under control? L62
Is it possible to train my dog to open the gate?

a serve as b

Are you still able to serve as a police officer? A Time to Kill (1996) L43

This van would serve as my home.

Teenage Badass (2020)

When my father was young, he served as the company's doctor.

If you put forward a plan, proposal, or name, you suggest that it should be considered for a particular purpose or job.

put forward a plan ...

Who put forward this plan?

You must put forward a proposal and then talk to us.

[Story]: A better plan was put forward.
was/how/when/who...

solve the problem of a

The moment you solve the problem of ventilation, I will tell everyone about it. L60
We won't get it under control, unless we solve the problem of ventilation. L62
We need to solve the problem so that...
L59

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'vɜ:səs/***versus prep.**

1 Someone must have taught us about good versus evil, for it looks like most of us know that. L17

2 When we want to do anything, we must think of the risk versus reward.

*/'krɪsməs/ /prezənt/***Christmas n. present n.**

1 She bought a Christmas present for my mother.

2 If she had bought a Christmas present for my mother, I would have told you. L64

3 She suggested that you should buy a Christmas present for your mother. L64

*/'sə:kəs/***circus n.**

1 The circus owner, Leo, is my closest friend. L63

2 What sort of circus do you have here? L63

3 Leo points out that she owns a circus. L 58
4 go to the circus...

5 If you had gone to the circus, you would have met her. L64

*/ə'kʌmpəni/***accompany v.**

1 Aunt March is very ill, so Laurie will accompany them. Little Women (2019)

2 Will you accompany to that coffee shop, please?

3 I will have to persuade you to accompany me to the lake this afternoon. L19 L54

*/ə'prəʊtʃ/***approach v.**

1 If you were here, you would approach the tunnel too. L40

2 We need to find out who approached our house in the dark last night. L53

3 do/why/how/who...

4 It was he who approached us. Black Sunday (1977) L58

homework

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/o:t/***ought***/wεɪ/***weigh v.**

1 How much do you weigh?

2 How much money do you have? I have to weigh them first.

3 [Story]: It must weigh a few tons.

4 It might weigh a few tons. L19

5 It can't weigh a few tons. L17

*/'fɔ:tʃənət/***fortunate adj.**

1 It is fortunate that + 句子...

2 It's very fortunate that this is a registered letter. L54

3 It was fortunate that he signed for the registered letter last night. L54

4 It was fortunate that he didn't smash the vase to pieces. L49

- How much do you weigh?

- It is fortunate that + 句子...

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句

2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子

3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

65 Grammar

should & ought to

should do & ought to do

肯定:

Leo will be alone tonight.

- We should invite Leo to our party.
- We ought to invite Leo to our party.

Your salary is very low.

- You should look for another job.
- You ought to look for another job.

should & ought to

否定: +not

- You shouldn't believe him.
- You ought not to get out of the house.
- You oughtn't to call him that.
- You ought not to eat that. You'll get fat. Places in the Heart (1984)

should have done

ought to have done

本应该做某事，但却没有。

- You missed a great party last night.
You should have come. Why didn't you?
- You ought to have come.
- We lost the game yesterday, but we should have won.
We were the better team.
- We ought to have won.

should (ought to) do

should (ought to) have done

- You look tired. You should (ought to) go to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night.
You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

65 Story+Expressions

- be dressed up as...
- set off
- hold up the traffic/line
- agreed to do sth.
- let sb. off

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

be dressed up as / dressed up as...

Why are you dressed up as a woman?

A guy (dressed up as a dog) was selling watches there.

She's dressed up as an old fat man.

A Bad Moms Christmas (2017)

I think he is the guy who dressed up as a Santa.

set off L12 set out

We will set off at eight o'clock.

will/when/who/why...

When will you set off tomorrow?

hold up the traffic/line

Move man! You're holding up the traffic.

Don't hold up the line.

It's said that someone is holding up the line. L58

agreed to do sth.

He might agree to meet you. L19

The vicar's agreed to visit you.

You agreed not to make a sound. L56

let sb. off

Why did they let him off?

It was you who let him off, not me! L58

If you hadn't let him off, we would have got the money. L64

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'læŋkəstə / 'bɒmə /
Lancaster bomber n.

- 1 If you had gone to the museum yesterday, you would have seen that Lancaster bomber.
L64
- 2 I had been studying all sorts of bombers before I finally saw a real Lancaster bomber.
L62 L63
- 3 Leo spent years studying Lancaster bomber.
L59

/rɪ'meʊt/
remote adj.

- 1 He's in a remote house which is near a village fair. L60
- 2 The moment I got out of this remote place, I will... L60
- 3 It's said that Leo lives in a remote area in Beijing. L58
- Where's the remote control I gave you? Why?
Pleasantville (1998)

/pe'sifik/
Pacific n.

- 1 We are here because a Japanese cargo ship sank in the Pacific. Life of Pi (2012)
- 2 Our captain will sail across the Pacific ocean and he will leave tomorrow morning. L12
- 3 You know, it's been over thirty years since I saw the pacific ocean.Yeah? Mackintosh and T.J. (1975)

/dæmɪdʒ / /rɛk /
damage v. wreck n. (car/ship)

- 1 The house was damaged by the floods. L10
- 2 When we were looking at the wreck of the boat, the captain came. L7
- 3 Apart from that wreck, I don't have anything.
L14
- 4 They must have found the wreck of the bomber in that remote island. L17

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/ri:dɪ'skʌvə /
rediscover v. discover

- 1 I wanna help you. I'm gonna help you rediscover your manhood. Thin Ice (2011)
- 2 She realized that she could rediscover her purpose of life. L20
- 3 Everyone thinks the bomber (damaged during World War II) can be rediscovered. L21

/sə'veɪ /
survey n.

- 1 do/does/did/doing/done a survey...
- 2 Do you want to do a survey?
- 3 He said that he was doing a survey.
- 4 The survey must be taken before next Friday.
L21

/reskju:/ /'eriel /
rescue v. n. aerial adj.

- 1 The moment we have a rescue plan, we will tell you. L60
- 2 Our captain has ordered us to rescue Leo. L43
- 3 It occurred to me that we found this in an aerial survey of the island. [Story] L46
- 4 Can you fix the aerial? The aerial needs fixing.
L44

/'pækɪdʒ /
package v. n.

- 1 Please, Leave your package on the desk.
- 2 The package is so big that he won't be able to carry it. L35
- 3 Your mother sent these packages. did/who.
- 4 Let's package these tonight, all right?
- 5 You can't eat packaged food the rest of your life. Just Add Water (2008)

/ɪn'θju:ziəst/
enthusiast n.

1 You can see grandpa fishing everyday, so I guess we could say that he is a fish enthusiast.
L35

2 He is really looking forward to every holiday, so we call him a holiday enthusiast. L37

3 If I were a computer enthusiast, I would be able to solve your problem. L40 L43 L64

/rɪ'stɔ:/
restore v.

1 The police must try to restore order.

2 It was possible that the police was only trying to restore order. L64

3 They should have tried to restore order. L65

/ɪ'mædʒɪn/
imagine v.

1 I don't know how you found me, but imagine my surprise. Se7en (1995)

2 I can't imagine what you saw out there. L39

3 Can you imagine that?

4 It's hard to imagine.

/'pækɪŋ/ /keɪs/
packing case

1 You should have opened these packing cases. L65

2 Leo agreed to open the packing case. L65

3 She suggested that you shouldn't open the packing case. L64 L65

/'kɔləni/ /bi:/
colony n. **bee** n.

1 After he had lived with a colony of bees in his garage, he finally put forward a plan to solve this problem. L64

2 If she had seen that colony of bees, she wouldn't have been in the hospital. L64

3 In the future, when you see a colony of bees, listen to me, run away. L60

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/haɪv/
hive n.

1 There must be a hive in it. L17

2 The queen bee never leaves the hive.

3 does/why...

4 It's said that there is a hive in the tunnel. L58

5 That is what we call a hive.

Brightburn (2019) L46

/prɪ'zɜ:v/ /'bi:zwæks/
preserve v. **beeswax** n.

1 We preserve it in beeswax so that it won't turn bad. L59

2 It had preserved in beeswax for almost 90 years before we found it. L14

3 It must have been preserved in beeswax for it is in perfect condition. L21

- remote control
- do a survey
- Can you imagine that?
- It's hard to imagine.
- A colony of bees

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

66 Grammar

have something done...

get something done...

含义: cause something to be done by somebody else.

- I must have my watch repaired.
- I must get my watch repaired.
- I'm going to have my hair cut this afternoon.
- I'm going to get my hair cut this afternoon.

时态:

- I had my hair cut yesterday.
- We are having the house painted this week.
- I'm going to have my hair cut this afternoon.
- He has his hair cut every month.

did vs have something done

- Lisa repaired the roof.
- Lisa had the roof repaired.
- I made those curtains.
- I had those curtains made.

have something done

意外, 不幸的遭遇。翻译成被。

Gary had his nose broken in a fight.

I had my bag stolen.

Have you ever had your bike stolen?

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

66 Story+Expressions

- over the years
- in reasonable condition
- be worth doing...
- turn a into b.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

over the years

People say they've received letters from him over the years. L4

Over the years, my feelings have changed. *The Painted Veil* (2006)

I have heard a lot about you over the years.

in reasonable condition

in good/perfect/bad condition

And the good news is you're in good condition. *Flight* (2012)

My father forbids me to touch it, for he wants to keep it in perfect condition.

L51

be worth doing...

It's worth pointing out that he doesn't have a good reputation. L58

I still think it's worth doing.

I know it's not gonna be easy, but you said anything worth doing is difficult. *Patch Adams* (1998)

turn a into b.

We want to turn this into a real university.

We ought to put money together, and turn this into a computer center. L65

Mom, she agreed to turn me into a unicorn. L65

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/vɒl'keɪnəʊ/

volcano n.

- 1 I should have spent more time studying volcanoes. L65 L59
 2 She is eager to see the volcano. L57
 3 Leo became an expert at volcanoes. L59
 4 If you had gone to the national park, you would have seen the famous volcano. L64

/ˈæktɪv/

active adj.

- 1 active volcano
 2 If you had spent more time studying active volcanoes, you should have known this. L64
 3 Two years ago, you were a school prefect and active in the church.
 4 We ought to have learnt more about active volcanoes. L65

/kɔŋgəʊ/

Kivu n. Congo n. Kituro n.

/ɪ'ræpt/

erupt v.

- 1 It was very fortunate that when the volcano erupted, no one was near it. L65
 2 He's like a volcano just waiting to erupt. Rocky IV (1985)
 3 An active volcano may erupt at any time. L19

/vɔɪələntli/

violently adv. violent adj.

- 1 She became so nervous that she shook violently. L35
 2 If you had shaken your head so violently, you would have been in hospital too. L64
 3 He kicked at the door violently.
 4 did/who/what/how/why/when...

/mænɪdʒ/

manage v.**homework**

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/ˈbrɪljənt/

brilliant adj.

- 1 What a brilliant idea!
 2 That's brilliant!
 3 I had a brilliant plan. We can have our house rebuilt. L66
 4 I have all sorts of brilliant plans in my head. L63

/lɪkwid/

liquid adj.

- 1 They have been turned into liquid. L66
 2 have/how/why/what...
 3 You should have stayed away from the liquid rock. L65
 4 If you had stayed away from the liquid rock, you wouldn't have been hurt. L64

/ɪ'skeɪp/

escape v. n.

- 1 There is no escape from this/her?
 2 If you try to escape, I will shoot you. L16
 3 The cat (that I bought from the market) always tries to escape. L28

/ə'læɪv/

alive adj.

- 1 He's alive.
 2 We need/want him alive.
 3 There's something alive down there.
 Star Wars: Episode V – The Empire Strikes Back (1980)
 4 We need him alive so that ... L59

- What a brilliant idea!
- That's brilliant!

67 Grammar

manage v.

Cambridge Dictionary:

to succeed in doing or dealing with something, especially something difficult

managed to do sth. = was able to do sth.

过去成功事件(具体)

肯定句

1. The fire spread quickly, but everybody managed to / was able to escape.
2. They didn't want to come with us at first, but we managed to / were able to persuade them.
3. I ran my first marathon recently, and it was very hard, but I managed to finish.

managed to do sth. = was able to do sth.

过去成功事件(具体)

一般疑问句: Did ... manage to ...

I managed to tell him about this.

1. Did you manage to tell him about this?

I managed to find the remote control.

2. Did you manage to find the remote control?

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

67 Story+Expressions

- name sth. a.
- set up his camp/tent
- sb. noticed that + 句子

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

name sth. a.

If it's a boy, I'm gonna name him Marty.
Bully (2001) L16

We should have named him Leo. L65
He's cool and he's smart, and that's
why I named him Todd.
Bad Words (2013)

set up his camp/tent

We're gonna set up the tent under the
trees, and we'll spend the night here.
Cold Ground (2017)

If we had set up the tent under the
trees, we would have died last night. L64
They had their tent set up under the
trees. L66

sb. noticed that+句子

I noticed that you had been looking at
me since I came into this room. L62

I have noticed that if you do not drink,
your hands shake.
Dirty Pretty Things (2002)
I noticed that you had your house
painted. L66

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/pə'sɪstənt/***persistent adj.**

- 1 You're very persistent.
 2 He's a little persistent guy, isn't he?
 3 If you weren't very persistent, we wouldn't be here. L40

*/ə'veɪd/***avoid v.**

- 1 avoid doing sth.
 2 I do try to avoid meeting new people recently.
 3 I've noticed that you tried to avoid meeting me recently. L67
 4 Please do try to avoid helping me in the future. L60

*/ɪn'sɪst/***insist v.**

- 1 insist on doing sth.
 2 Although you know smoking is bad for you, still you insist on doing that.
 3 Even though he was very sick that winter, he insisted on writing his new book.
 4 I insist on speaking to you.
 5 do/who/why...

*/krɒs/***cross v. across prep.**

- 1 Be careful when you cross the road.
 Cold Sweat (1970)
 2 He crossed the street so that he could avoid meeting that man. L59
 3 He lives across the street.
 4 does/where/why/who...

*/prɪ'teɪnd/***It is no use pretending that + 句子**

- 1 It's no use pretending that you want to help me.
 2 It's no use pretending that you try to cross the street.
 3 It's no use pretending that you love me.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/pri'vent/***prevent sb. from doing sth.**

- 1 My wife tried to prevent me from drinking every day.
 2 did/who/why/what...
 3 I don't know why that prevents you from getting me the remote control.
 4 Nothing could prevent me from sticking to my plan. L54

*/'fænsi/***Hey. Fancy meeting you here.**

- avoid doing sth.
- insist on doing sth.
- It is no use pretending that + 句子
- prevent sb. from doing sth.
- fancy meeting you here

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

68 Story+Expressions

- enjoy doing sth.
- no matter how/what/where
- follow sb. around
- I was wondering ...+句子
- would you mind my doing...
- finish doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化 四句型转换	其他习惯用法 其他单词+词性
造句指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变 6123456

enjoy doing sth.

I enjoy reading every night before I go to bed.

I enjoy drinking tea in the afternoon.
do/why/what/when...

no matter how/what/where/whose/who/which/when

I'll love you no matter what you do.
No matter where you go, I'll follow you around.
Call me when you arrive, no matter how late it is.

follow sb. around

Please don't follow me around.
You should have followed me around.
L65
She insisted on following me around yesterday.

I was wondering...+句子

more polite
I was wondering if you could help me.
I was wondering: do you need help?
I was wondering if I could buy you lunch.
Zodiac (2007)

动名词的逻辑主语

would you mind my doing...
would you mind doing sth.
mind+doing sth.
Formal: Do you mind my smoking?
Informal: Do you mind if I smoke?
Informal: Do you mind me smoking?

would you mind my doing...

He insisted on reading the letter.
He insisted on my/me reading the letter.
Would you mind telling me the whole story?
Would you mind Leo's/Leo telling us the whole story?

finish doing sth.

Have you finished reading the book (that you borrowed from me last month)?
L28
When you finish eating your dinner, please wash the dishes.
Before I finished speaking, she had run away.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'mɜːdə/***murder n.**

- 1 It was sam who murdered your father. L58
 2 After murdering the man, he ran away in the dark. L49
 3 He is said to murder his wife. L58

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/ɪn'strʌkt/***instruct v.**

- 1 be instructed to do sth.
 2 I'm instructed to tell you, if you insist on doing this, he will murder you. L68
 3 We have just been instructed to go home. Uprising (2001)
 4 I'm instructed to explain this to you. L33

*/e'kwaɪə/***acquire v.**

- 1 We should work hard to acquire a good knowledge of English.
 2 He managed to acquire a good knowledge of English. L67
 3 We must acquire a good knowledge of the real world so that we could live on our own. L59

*/'kɒnfɪdəns/***confidence n. confident adj.**

- 1 sb. be confident that ...+句子 L55
 2 [Story]: I began to acquire confidence.
 3 did/who/when/how/why...
 4 If you had my confidence, you would be successful too. L40

*/ɪg'zæmɪnə/***examiner n.**

- 1 The examiner insisted on coming into my house. L68
 2 It is no use pretending that the examiner knows you. L68
 3 The examiner prevented me from doing that. L68

*/sə'peʊz/***suppose v.**

- 1 Let's suppose that ...
 2 Let us suppose that he insists on doing this. L68
 3 Let us suppose that he notices this.
 4 Let us suppose that I do enjoy helping people. L68

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

69 Grammar

having been done...

完成被动!

- After having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence.
- After I had been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence.

having been done...

- He had been told many times.
- He finally understood it.
- After he had been told many times, he finally understood it.
- Having been told many times, he finally understood it.

having been done...

- They had been explained.
- They agreed with me at last.
- After they had been explained, they agreed with me at last.
- Having been explained, they agreed with me at last.

having been done...

- The fish had been caught by the fisherman.
- The fish died very soon.
- After the fish had been caught by the fisherman, the fish died very soon.
- Having been caught by the fisherman, the fish died very soon.

69 Story+Expressions

- continue doing / to do
- be pleased with

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

continue doing / to do

- If you want to continue working/to work for us, you will have to follow our rules.

L16

- She continued going/to go on a diet.

L51

- No one could account for the fact that she continued to do this. L46

be pleased with

- Were you pleased with his work?
- Why weren't you pleased with his work?
- I'm not pleased with this.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'bulfaɪt/ /rɪŋ/

bullfight n. ring n.

- 1 [Story]: during the bullfight...
- 2 During the bullfight, we should avoid throwing all sorts of things into the ring. L68 L63
- 3 I never really enjoy watching bullfight. L68
- 4 I've never seen a bullfight, have you? 10 to Midnight (1983)

/drʌŋk/

drunk n.

- 1 Sir, that drunk insists on buying more wine. L68
- 2 No matter where I went, that drunk followed me around. L69
- 3 I was wondering, maybe we should help that drunk. L69 L65

/'wɒndə/

wander v.

- 1 I ought to have wandered alone. L65
- 2 If you were here, I wouldn't have to wander alone. L40
- 3 You mustn't wander alone here at night.

/ʌnə'weə/

unaware adj.

- 1 be unaware of... be aware of...
- 2 Is there something I'm unaware of? Phantom Thread (2017)
- 3 Unaware of that, she just wandered into the tunnel by herself. L49
- 4 Although I was unaware of this at the time, teaching really made me happy. L57

/bʊl/ /mætədɔ:/

bull n. matador n.

- 1 The matador was eager to eat some food. L57
- 2 In his spare time, the matador likes to pay his friend a visit. L51 L52
- 3 The bull smashed everything in the ring to pieces. L49
- 4 The bull was killed by the matador last night.
- 5 was/what/who/how/why/when...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/rɪ'mɑ:k/

remark n. v. make that stupid remark

- 1 You needn't have made that stupid remark. L41
- 2 I'm not pleased with that stupid remark you just made. L69 L28
- 3 It is no use pretending that he hasn't made that stupid remark. L68
- 4 I find that remark stupid. L4

/e'pærəntli/

apparently adv.

- 1 Apparently, it's impossible for me to help you, if you don't want help yourself. L48
- 2 Apparently, she was instructed to do this. L69
- 3 Apparently, we should have insisted on doing this. L68 L65

/'sensɪtɪv/

sensitive adj.

- 1 a sensitive artist/actor...
- 2 Let's suppose that you live with a sensitive artist. L69
- 3 I know you're sensitive about that.
- 4 May I ask a very sensitive question?

/'krɪtɪzɪsm/

criticism n.

- 1 He is very sensitive to criticism.
- 2 It is difficult for everybody to accept criticism.
- 3 I have to say that you were the only sensitive actor (who could always accept my criticism). L28

/tʃa:dʒ/

charge v.

- 1 charge at sb. = attack
- 2 The bull charged at the drunk.
- 3 The men were instructed to charge at the enemy. L69
- 4 He noticed that the bull charged at him. L67

/'kʌmzəli/

clumsily adv.

- 1 No matter how clumsily or slowly you are, I will always love you. L68
 2 He noticed that the old man wandered slowly and clumsily alone. L 67
 3 [Story]: He clumsily stepped aside.
 4 did/who/how...

/baʊ/

bow v.

- 1 He insisted on Leo's bowing. L68
 2 But Leo refused to bow. L9
 3 "I should have bowed" said Leo in a mournful voice. L69 L65

/'seɪfti/

safety n.

- 1 For your safety, please remain inside the room.
 2 I should have led you to safety. L65
 3 Please avoid talking to anyone about this. It's for your safety. L68

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/sɪmpeθetɪkəli/

sympathetically adv.

- 1 He nodded his head sympathetically.
 2 did/who/how/why...
 3 They not only listened sympathetically, but they... as well. L25
 4 I do try to listen to my student's problems sympathetically, but I couldn't do that all the time.

- be unaware of ...
- be aware of ...
- make that stupid remark
- be sensitive about sth. accept criticism
- charge at sb. = attack
- for your safety

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

70 Story+Expressions

- be busy with sth.
- at the time
- catch sight of a.
- grow quiet...
- get close to a.
- step aside
- break into cheers
- feel sorry for sb.
- look on ...
- out of the way ...
- turn sb's attention to a.
- once more

be busy with sth.

- I have been so busy with school.
- He was just busy with his own life.
- After he found that Leo was busy with his work, he continued doing his own work. L69

at the time

- He was out of town at the time.
- I tried to write you a letter at the time.
- At the time, I didn't know why I needed to see Leo so badly. L39

catch sight of a.

- glimpse for a moment; suddenly notice.
- I have been here for hours so that I can catch sight of her. L59
 - When she caught sight of him, she smiled.
 - I caught sight of her in the crowd last night. did/who/where/when...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/g्रəʊ/ /gru:/ /g्रəʊn/

grow grew grown

grow quiet...

- They grew nervous, for ...
- It began to grow dark.
- As it grew dark, they set up the camp. L67
- I want to grow old with him. I love him. The Two Worlds of Jennie Logan (1979)

get close to a.

- It's not a good idea to get close to me.
- You really shouldn't get so close to me. L65
- If you had known what would happen to you, when you get too close to me, you wouldn't have done that. L64

step aside

withdraw or resign from an important position or office.

- You should have stepped aside. L65
- Why do you want me to step aside?
- You need to know when to step aside. L50

break into cheers

- Having been told the news, they broke into cheers. L49 L69
- They should have broken into cheers. L65
- Everybody broke into cheers when they knew that it was under control. L62

feel sorry for sb.

to feel sympathy for someone because they are in a difficult or unpleasant situation. 觉得某人挺可怜、值得同情、可悲

- He was fired last night. I feel sorry for him.
- He insisted on going abroad alone, and I feel sorry for his girlfriend. L68
- They never really enjoy learning new knowledge, and I feel sorry for them. L68

look on...

- A large crowd looked on as the band played.
- They just looked on and did nothing.
- You should have looked on and let it pass. L65

(get...) out of the way...

- Could you move the chair out of the way.
- I'm not so pleased with you, for you asked me to get out of the way. L69
- I managed to stay out of their way. L67

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

turn sb's attention to a.

- Leo ordered me to turn my attention to him. L43
- He needn't have turned his attention to the new computer. L41
- If you turn your attention to me right now, I'll give you ... L16

once more

- I'd like to visit the colleges once more before we leave.
- Do I have to remind you of that once more? L16
- Could you repeat that once more?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'pɑ:ləmənt/
parliament n.

- 1 Houses of the Parliament
2 英国国会大厦
3 威斯敏斯特宫

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/ɪ'rekt/
erect v.

- 1 It took a couple of hours to erect the tent. L50
2 She insisted on erecting the wall between her yard and mine. L68
3 I have tried everything to prevent him from erecting a wall. L68

/'ækjʊrət/
accurate adj.

- 1 I caught sight of the reports, and I have to say it's very accurate. L70
2 He was able to / managed to find the accurate number. L43 L67
3 It was you who were trying to be accurate, not him. L58

/ə'fɪʃəl/
official n. adj.

- 1 I have trouble with the officials. L28
2 The officials were so nervous that they ran away during the night. L35
3 I want to make it official so that I hired you. L59
4 We look forward to making it official. L37

Greenwich n.

- 1 格林尼治
2 世界计算时间和地理经度的起点

/ə'bɪ'zə:vətəri/
observatory n.

- 1 He had no sooner gone back home than they asked him to go back to the observatory. L38
2 He is planning to visit the observatory tonight. L38 L2
3 If you were at the observatory right now, you would understand me. L40

/tʃe:k/
check v. n.

- 1 They had the clock checked last night. L66
2 I'll double check that.
3 I've checked all the windows. Don't worry.

/'maɪkrofən/
microphone n.

- 1 She is busy with the new microphone. L70
2 You were instructed to buy a new microphone. L69
3 No one can prevent me from buying a new microphone. L 68

/taʊə/
tower n.

- 1 You can see the whole Paris at the top the Eiffel Tower.
2 The tower will be closed this evening. L21
3 The authorities had the tower closed. L66

- make it official
- double check

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

71 Story+Expressions

- all over the world
- burn down
- take its name from
- be responsible for
- be connected to
- go wrong

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

all over the world

- Hundreds of men were coming every week from all over the world.
- There are people who like fishing all over the world. L28
- People all over the world saw that “UFO” last night. did/who/what/when...

burn down

- If we don't stop him, he'll burn down the house! L16
- They were ordered to burn down the church. L43
- I learnt this morning that his house was burnt down last night. L45

take its name from

- The machine takes its name from its inventor. does/what/why...
- The street takes its name from a captain.
- The house takes its name from a great man.

be responsible for

- It occurred to me that you were the guy who was responsible for all this. L46
- No matter what happens to this animal, you will be responsible for it. L68
- I'm responsible for the safety of all my men.

be connected to

- My computer is connected to the microphone. is/what/why/how...
- If the computer is connected to this, then we will all avoid touching that. L68
- I'm connected to all of them.

go wrong

- If things go wrong, don't feel sorry for me. L70
- Did something go wrong?
- If you had helped me, nothing would have gone wrong. L64

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'reɪsɪŋ/
racing n.

- 1 racing driver/car...
- 2 No one could account for the fact that women like racing drivers. L46
- 3 This car takes its name from a great racing driver. L71
- 4 For your safety, please stay away from the racing car. L70

/pɜː/
per

- 1 Our rooms are twenty two dollars per night. Mystery Train (1989)
- 2 And I can pay you per hour. I Am Sam (2001)
- 3 "It's only twenty dollars per person." Field of Dreams (1989)

/juːtaː/
Utah n.

/'hɔːspəʊə/
horsepower n.

- 1 I didn't know anything about horsepower.
- 2 After searching the internet, I learnt a little bit about horsepower. L49
- 3 [Story]: It had a 2,500-horsepower engine.
- 4 did/what...

/bɜːst/
burst v.

- 1 [Story]: A tyre burst during the first run.
- 2 did/how/what/when...
- 3 If you had checked the tyre before leaving home, it wouldn't have burst. L64 L49
- 4 burst into tears...
- 5 I used to burst into tears for no reason at all. Fried Green Tomatoes (1991) L31

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'ævərɪdʒ/
average adj.

- 1 The average salary is \$39,000 a year.
- 2 Peter was a very average racing driver.
- 3 I've got two very clever students, but the rest are average.

/'fʊtstep/
footstep n.

- follow in sb's footsteps...
- 1 I'm following in my father's footsteps.
- 2 Why didn't you follow in your father's footsteps and keep the restaurant open? Gourmet Detective: Roux the Day (2020)
- 3 I was unaware of the footsteps in the garden. L70
- 4 I should have followed those footsteps. L65

- **burst into tears**
- **follow in sb's footsteps**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

72 Story+Expressions

- have difficulty in doing sth.
- be disappointed to learn that

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

have difficulty in doing sth.

- I had a great difficulty in persuading him to go with me. L54
- I have difficulty in sleeping at night.
- Even if I have difficulty in sleeping at night, I still work very hard during the day.

be disappointed to learn that

- He was disappointed to learn I was there. Married Life (2007)
- We were all disappointed to learn that the picnic had been cancelled.
- I was disappointed to learn that he had returned the computer to Leo.

L45

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'rekɔ:d/ /'həʊldə/***record-holder**

- 1 Leo, the world record-holder, managed to put out the fire. L27 L67
 2 When she knew/knowing that she became the new record holder, she burst into tears. L72
 3 Tang did so well that she became the new record holder for this game. L35

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/'tru:ənt/***truant n.**

- 1 play truant from school ...
 2 I saw a truant throwing stones into the river. L35
 3 When I was young, I dreamed of playing truant from school all the time. L38
 4 I used to play truant a lot. L31

*/ʌnɪ'mædʒɪnətɪv/***unimaginative adj.**

- 1 imagine v. imaginative adj.
 2 He is such an unimaginative young man that... L35
 3 He used to be such an unimaginative young man. L31
 4 Don't follow in your father's footsteps, and become an unimaginative man. L72

*/ʃeɪm/***shame n.**

- 1 be put to shame = put sb. to shame
 2 You will be put to shame by this.
 3 I'm fairly confident that every students were put to shame by this. L55
 4 Your cooking puts me to shame, Leah.
 Loving Leah (2009)
 5 shame on you.

*/'hɪtʃhaɪk/***hitchhike v.**

- 1 hitchhike to sw.
 2 He managed to hitchhike to school every day when he was still a student. L67
 3 He insisted on hitchhiking to his hometown. L68
 4 You should have hitchhiked to this place. L65

*/'mi:nɪ:taim/***meantime n.**

- 1 in the meantime...
 2 In the meantime, he was busy with his homework. L70
 3 In the meantime, he was instructed to help Leo. L69
 4 In the meantime, he set up his camp under those trees. L67

*/'lɒri/***lorry n.**

- 1 He was hit by a lorry last night. L10
 2 It's easy for him to recognize his father's lorry.
 3 Although he knows how to drive a lorry, he doesn't know the way to New York. L25
 4 The lorry must have been stolen last night. L21

*/'bɔ:də/***border n.**

- 1 I have never been to the Russian border.
 2 They had no sooner reached the border than they saw their father. L38
 3 They succeed in crossing the border last night. L36

*/ɪ'veɪd/***evade v.**

- 1 He managed to evade the police. L67
 2 You're simply trying to evade the problem.
 3 You needn't have evaded the question. L41

- play truant from school
- be put to shame =
- put sb. to shame
- shame on you
- hitchhike to sw.
- in the meantime

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

73 Grammar

- 1. The climbers reached the top of the mountain. They spent the night there. (not only ... but ... as well)
 - The climbers not only reached the top of the mountain, but (they) spent the night there as well.

- 2. A fire broke out in a cinema. Several hundred people tried to leave the building. A number of them were injured. (When ... and)
 - When a fire broke out in a cinema, several hundred people tried to leave the building and a number of them were injured.

- 3. James Sullivan will give a lecture at the local library next week. His book on the Antarctic was published recently. (whose)
 - James Sullivan, whose book on the Antarctic was published recently, will give a lecture at the local library next week.

- 4. The police searched everywhere. The missing boy could not be found. His dog could not be found. (Although ... neither ... nor)
 - Although the police searched everywhere, neither the missing boy nor his dog could be found.

- 5. Fares have increased. The railway company is still losing money. The employees have demanded higher wages. (In spite of the fact that ... because)
 - In spite of the fact that fares have increased, the railway company is still losing money because the employees have demanded higher wages.

- 6. He gave me a fright. I knocked the teapot over. (such ... that)
 - He gave me such a fright that I knocked the teapot over.

- 7. I made sure. The alarm clock worked. I set it. It would ring at six o'clock. (After making... that ... so that)
 - After making sure that the alarm clock worked, I set it so that it would ring at six o'clock.

- 8. I hid the Christmas presents under the desk quickly. My young daughter would not see them. She entered the room. (so that ... when)
 - I hid the Christmas presents under the desk quickly so that my young daughter would not see them when she entered the room.

- 9. I refused the offer. I explained. I had already been offered a job by another company. (Refusing ... that...)
 - Refusing the offer, I explained that I had already been offered a job by another company.

- 10. He fought the wolves off for three hours. Help arrived. (before)
 - He fought the wolves off for three hours before help arrived.

73 Story+Expressions

- over and over again...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

over and over again...

- Because you were unaware of it, you did that to me over and over again. L70
- Please don't do that over and over again.
- This place was connected to that island by a bridge. Do I really need to say that over and over again? L71

homework

- 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
- 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
- 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'laɪmlaɪt/
limelight n.

- 1 The president's wife wanted to stay out of the limelight.
- 2 did/who/why/what...
- 3 For the past three years, Stephen has stayed out of the limelight.
- 4 I want to continue to stay out of the limelight. L69

/prɪ'keʊfən/
precaution n.

- 1 take precaution ...
- 2 We should have taken great precaution. L65
- 3 I am ordered to take every precaution. The Pink Panther Strikes Again (1976) L43
- 4 Why did you forbid me to take precaution? L51

/fæn/
fan n.

- 1 I never did tell you about my son, did I?
He's a big fan of yours. Gattaca (1997)
- 2 He is such a big fan of all sorts of music that ...
L35 L63
- 3 I'm a big fan of the money. Penelope (2006)

/'ʃeɪdi/
shady adj.

- 1 [Story]: ... a shady spot under some trees.
- 2 He has been reading a book in that shady spot for a long time. L52 have/ how long..
- 3 It used to be a beautiful, shady spot.
The New Yorker L31
- 4 We were able to/managed to find a shady spot and have a picnic there. L43 L67

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/'ʃerif/
sheriff n.

- 1 The sheriff insisted on our/us leaving the place. L68
- 2 It's no use pretending that you know our sheriff. L68
- 3 In the meantime, the sheriff's son played truant from school. L73

/'nəʊtɪs/
notice n. v.

- 1 sb. noticed that + 句子 L67
- 2 on such short notice...
- 3 Thank you for coming on such short notice.
- 4 There's a notice on the wall.
- 5 It was you who put the notice on the wall. L58

/sniə/
sneer n. v.

- with a sneer/ sneer at sb.
- 1 'You probably wouldn't understand,' he said with a sneer.
 - 2 He sneered at me like everyone else.
 - 3 did/why/who/when...
 - 4 Why do you sneer at people who write wonderful books? L28

- stay out of the limelight
- take precaution
- sb. is a big/huge fan of a.
- on such short notice
- with a sneer/ sneer at sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

74 Story+Expressions

- a party of
- Why don't we...
- carry sth. to sw.
- make oneself comfortable...
- don't be too hard on us...
- get out of here...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

a party of

- A party of young men are responsible for this. L 71
- A party of school children played truant from school and went to Paris. L73
- A party of men and women sang the same song over and over again. L73

Why don't we...

- Why don't we go into the kitchen? American Beauty (1999)
- Why don't we hitchhike to Beijing? L73
- Why don't we make it official? L71

carry sth. to sw.

- Why don't we carry this table to our yard?
- If you can carry it to the top of the mountain, you may find what you were looking for. L16 L46
- The man (who carried the bag to our house) lives across the street. L28

make oneself comfortable...

- Please come in and make yourself comfortable.
- Anne of Green Gables (1985)
- Why don't we make ourselves comfortable first?
- Why don't you lie down on the bed and make yourself comfortable?

don't be too hard on us...

- Don't be too hard on yourself.
- If I were you, I wouldn't be too hard on myself. L40
- You needn't have been too hard on him. L41
- Don't be too hard on them, for they are very young.

get out of here...

- He wants to know when we can get out of here. L39
- I'll deal with that situation as soon as I get out of here.
The Shining (1980) L14
- We should have got out of here. L65

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/θɪk/***thick adj.**

- 1 The ice can't be thick enough for us to walk on. L17
 2 The fog must have been too thick to drive to Beijing. L17
 3 Cleaning thick snow is one of my source of income. L20 L58

*/'sɪgnəl/***signal n.**

- 1 send a signal
 2 Our captain ordered us to send a signal. L43
 3 It is impossible for us to send a signal in this thick fog day. L48
 4 Why did you inquire about how to send a signal? L39

*/stæmp/***stamp v.****stamp out**

- 1 I saw you stamp out the fire. L35
 2 [Story]: She stamped out the letter "SOS" in the snow.
 did/who/what/when/where/why/ how...
 3 As soon as he stamped out of the bedroom, someone rang the bell. L14 L51

*/'helɪkɒptə/***helicopter n.**

- 1 She's been studying helicopter for nearly thirty years. L52
 2 It takes him ten years to learn how to drive a helicopter. L50
 3 He's fairly confident that he could drive this helicopter. L55

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/sɪ:n/***scene n.****arrive on the scene**

- 1 Before the police arrived on the scene, they had already escaped.
 2 The police (who first arrived on the scene) recognized the woman. L28
 3 We should have arrived on the scene early. L65

*/sə'veɪvəl/***survivor n.**

- 1 The survivors need to stay out of the limelight. L74
 2 They talked to the survivors over and over again. L73 did/who/why...
 3 All the survivors burst into tears when they finally met their family. L72

- **send a signal**
- **stamp out the fire**
- **arrive on the scene**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

75 Story+Expressions

- fly off course
- cover sb./sth. with a.
- get adj.
- It was not long before...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

fly off course

- The pilot was instructed to fly off course. L69
- No matter what happens, you should not fly off course. L68
- If the plane hadn't flown off course, they wouldn't have been killed. L64

cover sb./sth. with a.

- My mom insisted on covering me with a blanket. L68
- If you had covered yourself with a blanket, you wouldn't have got a cold. L64
- You should have covered yourself with a blanket. L65

get adj.

- get cold/hot/warm/dark/angry/old/better/ worse...
- Let's hope she gets better soon.
- It's getting dark.
- Cover yourself with a blanket or you'll get cold.

It was not long before...

- It was not long before they began to complain of the noise. L59
- It was not long before he found himself a new wife as beautiful as his first one. L32
- It was not long before he broke the record. L36

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

fool n.

1 April Fool's Day...
2 You fool. Don't be too hard on us! L74

bulletin n.

bulletin board
1 We've just read the notice on the bulletin board.
have/what/why/where...
2 The bulletin board was covered with messages.
L75
3 Let's make it official, and put it on the
bulletin board. L71

announcer n.

1 It was not long before the announcer told us
that the plane had flown off course. L75
2 The announcer tried to stay out of the
limelight after work. L74

macaroni n.

1 If you were here, you wouldn't eat the
macaroni too. L40
2 Please make yourself comfortable, and I will
cook some macaroni for you. L74
3 The macaroni (my mom cooked last night)
was brilliant and put every macaroni to shame.
L28 L73

leading adj. + cause(s)

1 Smoking is one of the leading causes of lung
cancer. L20
2 Breast cancer is the leading cause of death
for American women in their forties.
3 My father became a leading authority on
volcanoes.

grower n.

1 As a vegetable grower, he is busy with his
land all the time. L70
2 My father would do anything to prevent me
from becoming a vegetable grower. L68
3 The vegetable grower managed to set up his
camp under the tree. L67

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

splendid adj.
+ idea/example/view/garden...

1 What a splendid/brilliant idea!
2 I've noticed that you have a splendid garden. L67
3 I'm really happy to work for such a splendid
company. L4

stalk n.

1 There are many baby corns on one corn stalk.
2 We should have cut down all the corn stalks. L67
3 Chinese farmers used to collect corn stalks. L31

gather v. thresh v.

1 gather crop...
2 thresh crop...

process v.

1 processed food...
2 The crop is being processed at the factory
right now. L10
3 Remember, processed food is usually full of
salt and sugar. L7
4 We should be responsible for our own health
and eat less processed food. L71

Signor n.

1 present ... L13
2 I can't use my office at present, for it is
being repaired. L10
3 Are you taking any other drugs/ medicines
at present?
4 At present moment, nobody is aware of it. L70

/tʃæmpiən/
champion n.

- 1 the present champion ...
2 I am a huge fan of the present champion. L74
3 "Oh, you can do that too." said the present champion with a sneer. L74
4 They are all put to shame by the present champion. L73

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/stju:dɪəl/
studio n.

- 1 Most of the scenes were filmed in a studio. L10
2 It was not long before they could buy a new studio. L75
3 The studio (which he just bought last week) burnt down. L28 L71

- **on the bulletin board**
- **leading cause of**
- **What a splendid/brilliant idea!**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

76 Story+Expressions

- at the end of...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

at the end of...

- At the end of this week, I want you to get out of here. L74
- Always ask yourself at the end of the day, “What did I manage to do today?” L67
- I will be visiting him at the end of the week. L13

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/'mʌmi/ /i'dʒɪpʃən/

mummy n. Egyptian adj.

- 1 At the end of the show, we finally saw the mummy which was sent here from Egypt. L76
- 2 When the police arrived on the scene, they had already run away with the Egyptian mummy. L75
- 3 It's said that Leo is a huge fan of Egyptian mummy. L58 L74

/'tempəl/

temple n.

- 1 They had been building the temple for almost 30 years before it was finally finished. L62
- 2 We should have visited the temple. L65
- 3 If you were here, you would find this temple beautiful too. L4 L40

/mɑ:k/

mark n.

- 1 There were dirty marks on her trousers where she had wiped her hands. L55
- 2 She had a red mark on her arm where she'd burned herself. L55
- 3 They have been cleaning the kitchen all morning, for there were black marks everywhere. L52

/plæt/

plate n.

take plates of...

- 1 [Story]: on the X-ray plates
- 2 Who put this X-ray plate on the bulletin board and why? L76
- 3 Could you carry these X-ray plates to the doctor's office? L74
- 4 Take your X-ray plates and get out of here. L74

/dɪ'zɪ:z/

disease n.

- 1 [Story]: a rare disease ...
- 2 He had a rare disease called...
Oh sorry I forgot its name. did/what/who...
- 3 He must have had a rare disease. L17
- 4 If we get a rare disease from this water, at least we'll all die together. Laggies (2014) L16

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/la:st/

last v.

- 1 How long did it last?
- 2 The meeting lasted for almost three hours.
- 3 did/what/how long/why...
- 4 Make yourself comfortable, for this meeting will last for a long time. L74
- 5 It is you who should know that nothing lasts forever. L58

/pru:v/

prove v.

turn out

- 1 [Story]: It proved to be very difficult.
- 2 All our reports proved to be true.
- 3 She's proved to be very useful.

/'rezɪn/

resin n.

- 1 The mummy was covered with resin. L75
- 2 It was not long before they covered the mummy with resin. L75
- 3 We should have covered it with resin. L65

/skɪn/

skin n.

- 1 a skin disease
- 2 She must have got a skin disease. L17
- 3 She may/might have got a skin disease. L19
- 4 Someone must have covered the skin of the mummy with resin. L17 L75

/'sekʃən/

section n.

- 1 [Story]: a section of the mummy/your body...
- 2 This takes its name from a section of your body. And guess which part? L71
- 3 They were instructed to steal a section of the mummy. L69

/'fɪɡə/

figure n.

- 1 Meaning: the shape of the human body, or a person...
- 2 It was dark and I could only see two figures near the bulletin board. L76
- 3 I saw two figures stamp out the fire. L35 L75

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'nɔ:məli/

normally adv.

- 1 In the movie, the police normally arrive on the scene very late. L75
- 2 Normally, I enjoy reading alone in the evening. L68
- 3 Normally, I would avoid meeting him, but not today. L68

/sə'veɪv/

survive v.

- 1 We're gonna survive this, trust me!
- 2 Rose managed to survive this, because of Jack. L67
- 3 These plants can't survive in very cold conditions. L66

- have a rare disease
- a section of ...
- prove to be adj.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

77 Grammar

非限定性定语从句

- 限定性定语从句 L28
- 非限定性定语从句 L77: 解释, 补充, 说明。
 - My mother, who is 50 this year, lives with me now.
 - Beijing, which is the capital of China, has developed into a big city.
 - Among them will be Debbie's mother, who swam the Channel herself... L36
- He has a daughter who works in a hospital.
- He has a daughter, who works in a hospital. (=and she works in a hospital)

非限定性定语从句

▪ as

1. 指代整个完整句子
2. 位置灵活: 前中后 (which只能放句尾)

L14: As I soon learnt, he was English himself.

L74 As they soon learnt, disguises can sometimes be too perfect.

77 Story+Expressions

- have an operation
- died of...
- fall to pieces
- cut it open

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

have an operation

- I'm going to have an operation in a month.
- I had an operation last week.
- She must have been having an operation at the time. L17 L70
- 四句型

died of...

- My dad died of a heart attack. Almost Famous (2000)
- Yes. Yes, now, all of them died of this new disease? And the Band Played On (1993)
- But he died of cancer before he was able to pay a visit to his hometown. L43

fall to pieces

- 1. to break into parts
- 2. to become unable to control one's emotions
- The old map fell to pieces in my hands.
- When he heard the bad news, he just fell to pieces.
- We need to avoid touching that, for I fear that it would fall to pieces. L68 L64

cut it open

- We should have cut it open with a knife. L65
- If you were here, you would cut it open yourself. L40
- It is you who cut it open, not me! L58

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ɪn'taɪtl/

entitle v.

Meaning:

1. to give someone the right to do or have something

- entitle sb. to sth.
- entitle sb. to do sth.

2. to give a title to a book, film, etc.: = name sth. a L67

- Her latest book, entitled "The Forgotten One", is out this week.
- He entitled/named the book "Love Story".
- 3 This ticket doesn't entitle you to travel first class.

/kɑ:m/

calm v. adj. n.

1 calm down

2 Listen to me, you need to calm down.

3 Why are you so calm?

4 I try to keep calm all the time.

/nə:v/

nerve n.

1 Before she had an operation, I lit a cigarette to calm my nerve. L77

2 Wow, I can't believe that she had the nerve to ask for a raise on her first day! L6

3 lose sb's nerve...

4 After that, he lost his nerve, and moved to his hometown. L6

/kən'sen'treɪʃən/

concentration n. concentrate v.

1 This test will need all your concentration.

2 will/what/why...

3 lose/break/have + concentration

4 Normally, I wouldn't lose my concentration during the class.

5 You're breaking my concentration.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'sʌfə/

suffer v.

1 suffer from ...

2 Many people suffer from mental illness at some point in their lives.

3 After she had the operation, she had suffered terribly for several years. L77

4 The man (who suffered terribly for years) managed to live a better life. L28 L67

/'sɪmptəm/

symptom n.

1 We must not only treat the symptom, but the cause as well. L25

2 At least, can you tell me your symptom? L17

3 That is a symptom of depression.

4 No matter what symptoms you have, you should tell the doctor. L68

/'tempeɪə/

temper n.

1 have a good/bad temper

2 He is said to have a very bad temper. L58

3 He used to have a very bad temper. L31

4 lose sb's temper...

5 Calm down, don't lose your temper.

6 Don't make me lose my temper in front of everybody. L57

/'æpɪtɪət/

appetite n.

1 have/get a good/great appetite

2 I've noticed that you get a great appetite. L67

3 lose sb's appetite

4 If you were here, you would lose your appetite too. L40

/prə'dju:s/
produce v.

- 1 He produced a letter from his desk and he asked me to read.
2 One of the men suddenly produced a knife from his pocket.
3 did/what/why/where/when/who....

/ɜ:dʒ/
urge v.

- 1 urge sb. to do sth. = persuade sb.(not)to do sth.
L54
2 My parents urged me to return to China.
3 did/who/where/why/when...
4 He recognize the voice of Leo, and urged me to hang up the phone. L54

/sætɪs'fækʃn/
satisfaction n.

- 1 He was dismayed to find out that this wouldn't give him satisfaction. L54
2 Even if you own a gold mine, that won't give you satisfaction. L55
3 I got great satisfaction from helping people to learn.
4 I hope to find satisfaction in my new work. L36

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/dɪ'laitɪd/
delighted adj.

- 1 sb. be delighted that + 句子
2 I'm delighted that you get the nerve to do this by yourself.
3 I was delighted that you were not too hard on yourself. L74
4 I was delighted that you take precaution. L74

- entitle sb to do sth.
- calm down
- keep calm
- calm my nerve
- have/get the nerve to do sth.
- lose sb's nerve
- lose/break/have + concentration
- suffer from
- have a good/bad temper
- lose sb's temper
- have/get a good/great appetite
- lose sb's appetite
- urge sb. to do sth.
- give him satisfaction
- sb. be delighted that + 句子

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

78 Story+Expressions

- light a cigarette
- sb. be sure that+句子
- keep on doing sth.
- offer sb. sth.
- make no effort to do sth.
- a packet of...
- return to normal...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

light a cigarette

- He tired to calm down and lit a cigarette. L78
- Would you mind my lighting a cigarette? L68
- The moment you lit a cigarette, I knew that you were lying. L60

sb. be sure that+句子

- If you have any questions, I'm sure that Tom has the answers. Good Will Hunting (1997)
- I'm sure that he will explain this to you. L33
- I'm sure that she is as beautiful as her mom. L32

keep on doing sth.

- Why do you want to keep on working?
- She kept on putting up the tent in the yard. L27
- No matter what happened, just keep on trying and keep on hoping for better things in your life. L68

offer sb. sth.

- I think he just offered me a job.
- It gives me satisfaction to offer you a job. L78
- Who entitled you to offer him a job in my company? L78

make no/every effort to do sth....

- You said you would help me, but you made no effort at all.
- He made no effort to hide his disappointment.
- He made no effort to call the police.

a packet of...

- The little baby failed to open a packet of biscuits and lost his temper in the end. L16 L78 L1
- When he heard that he got a rare disease, he took out a packet of cigarettes. L77
- Get out of here with your packet of sweets. L74

return to normal...

- His appetite has returned to normal.
- We expect things to return to normal very soon. L34
- After he had the operation, his life returned to normal. L77

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'peərənt/***parent n.**

- 1 As a parent, we should avoid smoking near our children. L68
- 2 My parents prevented me from moving to New York. L68 L6
- 3 Children always break their parents concentration. L78

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/flaɪt/ /'e'tendənt/***flight attendant**

- 1 As soon as he lit a cigarette, the flight attendant asked him not to. L78
- 2 In the end, the flight attendant lost her temper. L78
- 3 “Please, make yourself comfortable” said the flight attendant. L74

*/'fraitənd/***frightened adj.**

- 1 feel frightened...
- 2 It made me feel frightened. L57
- 3 I felt frightened by the anger in his voice. L15
- 4 did/who/why/what...

*/'kjʊəriəs/***curious adj.**

- 1 sb. be curious to find out + 句子
- 2 I was curious to find out what she had said.
- 3 He was curious to find out why she had left her job so suddenly.
- 4 I'm curious to find out why he have such a bad temper. L78

*/bɒm/ /plænt/***bomb n. plant v.**

- 1 The police was sure that someone had planted a bomb near the station. L78
- 2 He got the nerve to plant a bomb there. L78
- 3 They covered the bomb with a blanket. L75

• **feel frightened**• **sb. be curious to find out + 句子**• **plant a bomb****homework**

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

79 Grammar

部分倒装

- only 在句首，主谓(可能)颠倒。
- Only on one occasion have I ever felt frightened.
- Only then did I understand what she meant.
- Only after her death was I able to do that.

Then, and only then, can the door be opened.

The Hobbit: An Unexpected Journey (2012)

"Only then will you understand what happened... and why."

A River Runs Through It (1992)

And only after a long time did I finally get my bearings.

Another Woman (1988)

Only then will the world return to normal.

Legend (1985)

Because only then, were we able to actually see the truth.

Anna (2013)

部分倒装

- only 说明主语，主谓不倒装。
- Only policemen can come in.
- Only my mother really understands me.

homework

1. Pattern Drill 写&朗读 置顶留言 4X4
2. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study–Test Learning Pyramid
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级)通过目录或索引(Index)查找到本课语法

79 Story+Expressions

- a great deal
- take charge of
- be used to doing...
- take off...
- gain height...
- touch down...
- on board...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

a great deal

to a very great degree or extent;
"I feel a lot better";
"we enjoyed ourselves very much";
■Your words meant a great deal to me.
The 6th Day (2000)
■This would help a great deal.
■I've read a great deal about you.
Gandhi (1982)

take charge of

to accept responsibility for something
and have control over it

负责; 控制, 掌管, 承担责任;

- His boss asked him to take charge of the office for a few days while she was away.
- At first she tried to take charge of the meeting. did/who/why/when...
- John will be taking charge of the next meeting. L13

be used to doing...

- be used to do sth... L55
It was used to detect gold.
- used to do L31
He used to smoke.
- He is used to asking his parents to help him. L11
- He is used to going to sleep very late. L49
- He's used to getting up at 6am on Saturdays.

take off / gain height / touch down...

- (plane)
- When will the plane be taking off? L13
 - The plane is trying to gain height at the moment.
 - When the plane touched down, several detectives were waiting at the airport.

on board...

- As soon as I was on board, the flight attendant offered me some drink. L78
- Find out if there's a doctor on board as quietly as you can. Airplane! (1980)
- I'm sure that he is on board. L78

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'pælɪs/***palace n.**

- 1 They visited the palace last week.
 2 did/where/when/what...
 3 The palace takes its name from the king. L71
 4 They kept guard in front of the palace for all night. L7

*/ɪk'strɔ:dɪnəri/***extraordinary adj.**

- 1 He's an extraordinary man.
 2 What an extraordinary building/idea!
 3 Would you mind my visiting the extraordinary building later? L68
 4 We should have visited the extraordinary palace. L65

*/ek'si'bɪʃən/***exhibition n.**

- 1 He lost his temper in the middle of the exhibition. L78
 2 Why don't we invite them to the exhibition? L74
 3 I'm curious to find out why you enjoyed the exhibition. L79

*/aɪən/***iron n.**

- 1 They tried to turn iron into gold. L66
 2 He managed to escape with an iron bar in his hand. L67
 3 He smashed the windows to pieces with an iron bar. L49

*/'veəriəz/***various adj.**

- 1 I have been reading various books for many years. L52
 2 He has a great appetite and enjoys eating various food L78 L68
 3 It occurred to me that he knew various people in our office. L46

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/mə'fɪ:nəri/***machinery n.**

- 1 It's a very expensive piece of machinery. Prometheus (2012)
 2 She was curious to find out what this wonderful machinery can do. L79
 3 They made no effort to repair this machinery. L78

*/dɪ'spleɪ/***display n.**

- 1 on show/ on display ...
 2 Machinery like this should be on display right now. L65
 3 A new kind of car was on display in the shop.
 4 A new kind of car will be on display in the shop soon.

*/stɪ:m/***steam n.**

- 1 When water boils, it turns into steam. L66
 2 Who invented the steam engine?
 3 The steam engine takes its name from the inventor. L71
 4 does/what/who/when...

*/'prɒfɪt/***profit n. v.****make a profit**

- 1 He hoped to profit from the exhibition. L36
 2 If we want to make a profit, we will need to know when to sell the sheep. L16
 3 It takes me ten years to make a profit from this. L50

/'kɒlɪdʒ/
college n.

- 1 go to college...
- 2 Why don't you want to go to college?
- 3 He will be going to college next year. L13
- 4 Can you account for the fact that... L46

单词 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- on show/ on display
- make a profit
- go to college

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

80 Story+Expressions

- be made of...
- of all time
- in all

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

be made of...

- What is this made of?
- It's like that he is made of iron.
- The bridge is made of wood.
is/what/ why...

of all time

- He is still the greatest basketball player of all time.
- He's one of the greatest actors of all time.

in all

- There are six people in all in my family.
- It's said that there were about 5,000 people in all. L58

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'prɪzənər/***prisoner n.**

1 When he realized that the prisoner was standing in front of him, he felt frightened.
L79 L20

2 He spent ten years studying these prisoners.
L59
3 He agreed to meet the prisoner tonight. L65

*/bʊʃ/***bush n.**

1 Before planting the bushes, we should water the ground first. L49
2 As soon as we planted the bushes in our garden, it started to rain. L14
3 The children enjoy hiding in the bushes. L68

*/'ræpɪdli/***rapidly adv.**

1 grow/change/move...
2 No matter what you do, children will grow up rapidly and leave you someday in the future.
L68 L60
3 I'm fairly confident that they are moving rapidly right now. L55

*/'ju:nɪfɔ:m/***uniform n.**

1 I don't like the color of our school uniform.
2 Why don't you like your school uniform?
3 If you saw the uniform, you wouldn't like that, either. L40
4 Wearing his uniform, he hitchhiked to New York. L49 L73

*/raɪfəl/***rifle n.**

1 They armed him with a rifle. L55
2 He succeed in buying a rifle. L36
3 I look forward to seeing your new rifle. L37

*/'ʃəuldər/***shoulder n.**

1 When I asked him if he wanted any lamb shoulder, he shook his head. L47
2 We should pay him a visit, for he hurt his shoulder last week. L51
3 If you touch my shoulder one more time, I will break your leg. L16

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/mɑ:tʃ/***march v.**

1 The soldiers marched along the street.
2 She was very angry and marched out of the door.
3 was/why/who/where...

*/'bəʊldli/***boldly adv.**

walk/act/speak...
1 in a brave and confident way,
without showing any fear
2 She marched/walked boldly out of the house.
3 [Story]: The prisoner marched boldly up and down in front of the camp.
4 did/who/why/where/when...
5 He went there boldly and knocked on the door.

*/bleɪz/***blaze v.**

1 Lights were blazing in every room last night.
2 If the lights in his room were blazing, he would feel frightened. L79 L40
3 The sun were blazing, and everyone in the garden had a great appetite. L78

*/se'lue:t/***salute v.**

1 If I could raise my hand, I would salute you. L40
2 The captain had no sooner got out of the ship than everyone at the harbor saluted him. L38
3 He was dismayed to find out that no one saluted him. L54

/'eldəli/

elderly adj. n.

1 polite word for old

2 I can always learn something new when I went out with the elderly (people).

3 The elderly man (who persuaded you not to smoke) is actually my father. L28 L54

4 “The windows need cleaning” said the elderly man. L44

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/grei/

grey adj.

1 a grey sky...

2 grey hair...

3 a grey cat...

/ʃa:p/

/bleu/

sharp adj. blow n.

1 [Story]: The prisoner knocked him to the ground with a sharp blow.

2 did/who/why/where...

3 He was knocked down by a sharp blow on the shoulder.

4 was/what/who/when...

- grow/change/move...+ rapidly
- with a sharp blow

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

81 Story+Expressions

- change into...
- up and down...
- sb. discovered that
- stand to attention
- knock him to the ground

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

change into...

- He will be changing into his uniform. L13
- I am curious to find out why you changed into your best clothes. L79
- If you want to change into your work clothes, you can use the room right back there. Elsa & Fred (2014) L16

up and down...

- Why do you walk up and down this street everyday?
- They are still marching up and down the street.
- His wife is having an operation right now, and he is walking up and down inside the waiting room. L77

sb. discovered that

- I've discovered that you are responsible for this. I71
- I've discovered that he is unaware of this. L70
- I discovered that he really enjoyed talking to me. L68

stand to attention

- The captain stood to attention and saluted. did/who/why/when...
- We were ordered to stand to attention. L43
- were/why/who/when...

knock him to the ground

- Did you knock him to the ground? why/when/who...
- You needn't have knocked him to the ground. L41
- He hit me so hard that he almost knocked me to the ground. L35

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'mʌnstər/***monster n.**

- 1 The child insisted on seeing the monster standing in the yard. L68 L35
 2 You are such a monster that no one wants to play with you. L35
 3 This little monster here is my private collection. L48

*/'seɪlər/***sailor n.**

- 1 Tired of working on a ship, the sailor fired his boss. L49
 2 The sailor decided to go on a diet. L51
 3 The sailor's brother went to college last year. L80

*/saɪt/***sight v.**

- 1 After having traveled at sea for 30 days, they sighted land. L49
 2 The monster had been sighted for several times by the villagers.
 3 had/what/who/how many times...
 4 When were they sighted?

*/'kri:tʃər/***creature n.**

- 1 unusual creature...
 2 This was such an unusual creature that he decided not to touch it. L35
 3 The owner of the unusual creature wants to make a profit. L80
 4 Surprisingly, the creature has a very good temper. L78

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/pɪ'kjʊ:lɪər/
peculiar adj.

- 1 peculiar fish...
 2 Leo is such a big fan of various peculiar monsters. L74
 3 This peculiar fish takes its name from the finder. L71
 4 Seeing the peculiar fish, everyone broke into cheers. L70

*/'ʃaɪ.nɪŋ/***shining adj.**

- 1 I think we should turn our attention to him, for he is a shining example to us. L70
 2 It is no use pretending that you are not a shining example to us. L68
 3 I will turn you into a shining example for all of us. L66

*/o:/***oarfish n.**

- 1 梭鱼; 皇带鱼

- shining example

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

82 Story+Expressions

- claim to have done sth.
- laugh at...
- it is now known that...
- at times...
- out at sea...
- in any way
- it was found to be...
- a depth of...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

claim to have done sth.

- She claimed to have set up a new world record. L36
- She claimed to have returned the book to Leo. L45
- She claimed to have made a profit. L80

laugh at...

- Before I leave this room, I will laugh at you.
- If they were your friends, they wouldn't laugh at you. Do the Right Thing (1989) L40
- You're gonna laugh at what I'm gonna say, but go ahead, I don't care. L46

it is known that...

- It is known that he knocked her to the ground with a sharp blow last night. L81
- It is known that he is the man who planted a bomb at the station. L79 L28
- It is well known that cats feel frightened when strangers enter the room. L79

at times...

- He loses his temper at times. L78
- I am curious to find out why he loses his temper at times. L79
- He would change into his uniform and walk up and down the street at times. L81

out at sea...

- The boats are all out at sea. are/where/why/what ...
- The fishing boats have been out at sea for three days.
- After the fishing boats had been out at sea for three days, they finally came back.

in any way

- He refused to help me in any way. L9
- I'm not trying to hurt you in any way.
- I'm not trying to avoid meeting you in any way. L68

sth./sb. was found to be...

- He was found to be a bad parent.
- If you are found to be worthless in a company, you will be fired.
- But the next day his body was found to be missing. House of 1000 Corpses (2003)

a depth of...

- The cave is found to be over a depth of six hundred feet.
- Water was found at a depth of 30 metres. L10
- The grass seeds should be planted at a depth of 10 feet.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ɪˈlekʃən/***election n.**

- 1 If you won the election, I would give you 2,000 dollars. L40
 2 She is used to winning the election, for she wins every time. L79
 3 I'm sure that you will win the election. L78

*/'fɔːrəm/***former adj.**

- 1 former president
 2 This building takes its name from the former president. L71
 3 He noticed that the former president was dressed up as Father Christmas. L67 L65
 4 I saw the former president at a village fair. L60

*/dɪ'fi:t/***defeat v.**

- 1 He has been defeated in the finally election.
 2 has/who/why...
 3 If you can defeat him, we will give you 2,000 dollars. L16
 4 It was Leo who defeated the monster, not you. L58

*/fə'nætɪkəl/***fanatical adj.**

- 1 He is a fanatical football fan.
 2 be fanatical about sth./doing sth.
 3 He is fanatical about football.
 4 He is fanatical about watching football games.
 5 Why are people so fanatical about this place?

*/ə'pəʊ.nənt/***opponent n.**

- 1 He knocked his opponent to the ground. L81
 2 He urged his opponent to explain this to everybody. L78 L33
 3 He defeated his opponent in the election.
 4 did/how/who...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

*/rædɪkəl/***radical adj.**

- 1 His opinions are very radical.
 2 I was shocked by her radical views. L10
 3 We should make a radical change in our way of learning English. L65

*/prə'grɛsɪv/***progressive adj.**

- 1 Radical Progressive Party

*/eks/***ex-**

- 1 ex-wife
 2 ex-boyfriend
 3 ex-girlfriend
 4 ex-husband

*/sə'spiʃəs/***suspicious adj.**

- 1 He looked suspicious, for he walked up and down the street all night. L81
 2 If you see anything suspicious, just call me. L16
 3 Why do you think that is suspicious?

- **win the election**

- **be fanatical about sth./doing sth.**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

83 Story+Expressions

- on duty
- On the following day
- love to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

on duty

- The doctor on duty feared that the patient would get worse. L64
- You're not allowed to drink alcohol on duty. L10
- Shouldn't you be on duty? L65

On the following day

- On the following day, he received a reward from his parents. L51
- On the following day, he helped me to plant the bushes in the garden. L52
- On the following day, she found out that Leo owns a gold mine. L55

love to do sth.

- They just love to run in the evening.
- I love to eat, and I like all sorts of holidays. L63
- I love to pay my grandparents a visit. L51

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/straɪk/***strike n.**

- 1 go on strike...
 2 Are teachers allowed to go on strike? L10
 3 The workers decided to go on strike.
 4 did/who/when/why ...
 5 The workers refused to go on strike. L9

*/bʌsmən/***busman n. bus driver**

- 1 Almost all the bus drivers went on strike last Friday.
 2 did/who/why/when...
 3 The busman discovered that one passenger was very suspicious. L81

*/steɪt/***state v.**

- 1 sb. have stated that+句子
 2 He stated that he recognized the voice of Leo. L54
 3 Jessie immediately stated that he wanted to tell us about it. Devil's Knot (2013)
 4 He stated that his boss refused to stick to the plan. L54

*/ə'grɪmənt/***agreement n.**

- 1 agreement is reached about sth.
 2 reach an agreement
 3 Again, they failed to reach an agreement. L16
 4 They managed to reach an agreement. L67
 5 They hope to reach an agreement tonight. L36

*/ri'lɪ:vɪ/***relieve v.**

- 1 sb be relieved to hear that + 句子
 2 I'm so relieved to hear that he has won the election. L83
 3 I'm relieved to hear that they finally made a profit last year. L80
 4 I'm relieved to hear that.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/'presaʊə/
pressure n.

- 1 relieve pressure ...
 2 This will relieve pressure on him.
 3 The kid is under a lot of pressure, for his father has a very bad temper. L78
 4 He noticed that he'd been under a lot of pressure. L67

*/ɪk'stent/***extent n.**

- 1 to some extent ...
 2 I agree with you to some extent. L65
 3 To some extent, she was responsible for the accident. L71
 4 do/was/who/why...

*/vələn'tiə/***volunteer v. n.**

- 1 volunteer to do sth.
 2 They volunteered to teach English.
 3 did/who/why/what...
 4 Will anyone volunteer to help me to clean up this mess? L52
 5 I need a volunteer to take charge of this place. L79

*/'grætitju:d/***gratitude n.**

- 1 expressed sb.'s gratitude to sb. ...
 2 I would like to express my gratitude to everyone that helped us.
 3 I would like to express my gratitude to everyone for their hard work.
 4 We should have expressed our gratitude to him. L65

/presa/
press n.

- 1 He gave the news to the press last night.
2 did/who/what/when...
3 You must press this button to start the radio.
4 Leo won the election and I read about it in the press. L83

/'ɒbjekɪt/
object v. objection n.

- 1 sb. have objected that + 句子
2 I objected that he was too young for the job.
3 did/what/why...
4 The local busmen have objected to the plans.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- go on strike
- sb. have stated that+句子
- agreement is reached about sth.
- reach an agreement
- sb be relieved to hear that + 句子
- relieve pressure
- under a lot of pressure
- to some extent
- volunteer to do sth.
- expressed sb.'s gratitude to sb. ...
- sb. have objected that + 句子
- object to sth./sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

84 Story+Expressions

- be due to do...
- pass/take the test

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

be due to do...

if someone is due to do something, they are expected to do it or going to do it:

- The former president is due to arrive here in New York later next month.
- The captain is due to leave in a few hours.
- We are due to receive 2,000 dollars from you in one week. L4

pass/take the test

- You will be passing the test. L13
- You should have taken the test. L65
- On the following day, he took the test.

L83

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ɪn'fɔ:m/***inform v.**

- 1 sb. inform sb. that + 句子
 2 The captain informed me that he won the election again. L83
 3 The teacher informed the kid's parents that he lost his temper in the class. L78
 4 He's just informed me that he got a rare disease. L77

*/'hed'ma:stə/***headmaster n.**

- 1 The headmaster has informed every students that the police will take charge of school soon. L79
 2 When the headmaster arrived on the scene, no one was there. L75
 3 The school takes its name from the headmaster. L71

*/kən'tribju:t/***contribute v.**

- 1 make a contribution ...
 2 I'd like to contribute to his college fund.
 3 It is no use pretending that you haven't contributed to the business. L68
 4 They thought I might be able to contribute to the party. Glorious 39 (2009) L19 L42

*/gɪft/***gift n.**

- 1 He is eager to give her a gift. L57
 2 My girlfriend persuaded me not to buy her a gift this year. L 54
 3 That's actually a good idea. We should buy him a gift. L52

*/æl.bəm/***album n.**

- 1 They were not surprised to see that the headmaster received an album from his students. L51 L4
 2 I regretted giving him that album. L41
 3 When he saw the album, he burst into tears. L72

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'peɪ.səns/***patience n.**

- 1 Thanks for your patience.
 2 lose sb's patience / have a lot of patience ...
 3 He kept on crying and I lost my patience. L78
 4 In the end I lost my patience and shouted at her. L1
 5 I ask for your patience and your help. L6

*/ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/***encouragement n.**

- 1 Thank you for the encouragement.
 A Time to Kill (1996)
 2 give sb. encouragement ...
 3 My father love to give me encouragement. L83
 4 If my father had given me encouragement like your father did, I would have gone to college. L80 L64

*/feə'weɪl/***farewell n.**

- 1 [Story]: attend a farewell dinner...
 2 She was relieved to hear that she didn't have to attend the farewell dinner. L84
 3 She claimed to have attended a farewell dinner last night. L82
 4 He changed into his best suits and attended a farewell dinner. L81

*/'ɒnər/***honour honor n.**

- 1 in sb's honor...
 2 I'm gonna win this game tonight in his honor.
 3 We'd like to invite you to join us for a party in your honor! Hard Target 2 (2016)
 4 We're gonna name him Marcus in your honor. Vacation Friends (2021) L67

/kəʊ'ɪn'sɪdəns/

coincidence n.

- 1 It is a curious coincidence that + 句子
 2 It can't be a coincidence that I saw you here this morning. L17
 3 It's no coincidence that people went on strike on the same day that he won the election. L84 L83

/tə'tɔ:təl/

total n.

- 1 a total of ...
 2 They received a total of 20 letters from fans last week. L4
 3 A total of twenty people were killed last night. L10
 4 They tried to offer me a total of 20,000 dollars. L79

/dɪ'veət/

devote v.

- 1 devote oneself to sth. / doing sth.
 2 I devote myself to helping the poor.
 3 After I had graduated, I continued to devote myself to research. L42
 4 I really enjoy learning and reading, so I devote myself to knowledge. L68

/'ga:dənɪŋ/

gardening n.

- 1 The headmaster has decided to devote himself to gardening.
 2 has/why/who/what...
 3 He is busy with the gardening now. L70
 4 I'm just gonna do some gardening this afternoon.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'hɒbi/

hobby n.

- 1 My hobby is gardening. Are you interested in learning that? L20
 2 need/get/have + a hobby ...
 3 Everyone should have a hobby. L65
 4 Why don't we talk about your hobby? L74

- sb. inform sb. that + 句子

- make a contribution

- contribute to sth.

- lose sb's patience

- have a lot of patience

- give sb. encouragement

- in one's honor

- It is a curious coincidence that + 句子

- a total of...

- devote oneself to sth. / doing sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

85 Story+Expressions

- mark the occasion
- remember sb. for sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

mark the occasion

- If you mark an occasion, you do something to celebrate it:
- They gave him a gift to mark the occasion .
- I'd like to say a few words to mark the occasion.

An Inspector Calls (2015)

remember sb. for + sth.

- You will remember me for this.
- They stated that they would remember him for his courage. L84
- did/who/why/what...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/swɪŋ/ /swʌŋ/***swing** **swung** v.

- 1 [Story]: The man tired to swing the speedboat round. = turn round... did/ who...
 2 His arms swung as he walked.
 3 It is a curious coincidence that they swung their cars round at the same time. L85

*/'spi:dbo:t/***speedboat** n.

- 1 It is said that he is so rich that he has a speedboat. L58 L35
 2 It is a curious coincidence that we bought the speedboat at the same place. L85
 3 He is relieved to hear that the speedboat was sold last night. L84

*/'desperətlɪ/***desperately** adv.

- 1 [Story]: He waved desperately to his friends.
 2 did/why/who/when...
 3 They tried desperately to reach an agreement. L84
 4 We are trying desperately to stick to our plan. L54

*/kəm'pænjən/***companion** n.

- 1 My companion waited for me at the end of the street. did/who/where/when/why... L76
 2 My companion keeps on breaking my concentration. L78
 3 My companion suffers from a rare disease. L78

*/ski:/***water** **ski**

- 1 He has devoted himself to water skiing. L85
 2 She asked me if I wanted to go water skiing. L39
 3 I would like to go water skiing with my daughter. My Father the Hero (1994)

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/'bu:oɪ/***buoy** n.

- 1 She was trying to swim to that buoy.
 2 The captain informed us that the buoy wasn't there. L85
 3 He volunteered to check the buoy. L84

*/dɪ'smeɪl/***dismay** n.

- 1 sb. noticed with dismay that + 句子
 2 She soon noticed with dismay that her opponent won the election. L83
 3 He noticed with dismay that everything had already returned to normal. L78
 4 I noticed with surprise that the house had not been repainted.

*/tri'men.dəs/***tremendous** adj.

- 1 at tremendous speed...
 2 [Story]: It came towards them at tremendous speed. did/what/how fast...
 3 This is such a tremendous honor.
 4 It has a tremendous effect on you. L28

*/'petrol/***petrol** n.

- 1 Petrol is becoming more and more expensive.
 2 is/why...
 3 After a long journey, we found a petrol station in the end. L1
 4 The driver stopped the car at the petrol station. did/who/where/when...

/drift/
drift v.

- 1 No one noticed that the boat had begun to drift out to sea. L67
- 2 Their boat drifted down the river.
did/what/ where...
- 3 The ball (which they bought last night) is drifting on the river. L28

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'dʒentli/
gently adv.

- 1 The speedboat is drifting gently down the river. is/what/how...
- 2 She touched his shoulder gently with her both hands. did/what/why/how...
- 3 "He has a very bad temper "she said gently.

- sb. noticed with dismay that + 句子
- at tremendous speed

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

86 Story+Expressions

- come away
- move in a circle
- used up...
- before long...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

come away

- 离开/脱离
- The paper has started to come away from the walls.
- The handle came away in my hands. did/ what/how...
- It is now known that it just came away in your hands. L82

move/walk/sit + in a circle

- Why did they move in a circle?
- Come here, let's sit in a circle on the floor.
- The captain ordered us to stand in a circle. L43

used up...

- She's used up all the hot water.
- It is said that they have used up all their money. L58
- How can you use up all the glue in one night?

before long... = soon

- I hope to see you again before long. L36
- We'll finish the work before long.
- Before long, the little bird will follow you around. L68

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/æl'bɪ/***alibi n.**

- 1 He had a perfect alibi and the police let him go. did/who ...
 2 If he had had a perfect alibi, the police wouldn't have continued to search his place.
 L64 L69
 3 His lawyer has stated that he has an alibi. L84

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/kə'mɪt/***commit v.**

- 1 commit a murder ...
 2 If you had committed a murder, the police would have known that. L64
 3 He devoted himself to finding out who committed the murder. L85
 4 The police stated that they had find out who committed the murder. L84

*/ɪn'spektə/***inspector n.**

- 1 The inspector has lost his patience. L85
 2 The inspector, Leo, has just decided to volunteer to find out who committed the murder. L84
 3 The inspector was relieved to hear that the murderer was caught last night. L84

*/ɪm'plɔɪə/***employer n.**

- 1 The employer claimed to have fired 500 hundred people last week. L82
 2 Our employer is used to getting up very early in the morning. L79
 3 She is such a huge fan of her employer. L74

*/kən'fɜ:m/***confirm v.**

- 1 sb. confirm that + 句子
 2 He just confirmed that the volcano was erupting violently.
 3 Can you confirm that he hitchhike to Paris last week? L73
 4 I can confirm that they have made it official. L71

*/sə'dʒɛst/***suggest v.**

- 1 I'm not suggesting she was responsible for the accident. L71
 2 Are you suggesting I'm lazy?
 3 I suggest you take a taxi.

*/tru:θ/***truth n.**

- 1 tell the truth...
 2 It was Leo who told us the truth, not you. L58
 3 I'm fairly certain that he told the police the truth. L55
 4 Until we discover the cause, we won't be able to tell the truth. L53

- **have a alibi**
- **commit a murder**
- **sb. confirm that + 句子**
- **Are you suggesting...**
- **tell the truth**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

87 Story+Expressions

- on time

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

on time

- It's my first day, so I must be on time.
- Tell him that he must be at the meeting on time.
- So you can at least try to be on time.

L17

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/træp/
trap v.

- 1 [Story]: Six men have been trapped in a mine for 17 hours.
 2 have/who/how long/why/where...
 3 He was trapped in a gold mine last night.
 4 was/where/when/why/who...
 5 I felt trapped in a place that wasn't my home.

/'sə:fɪs/
surface n.

- 1 Most of the earth's surface is covered by sea. L10
 2 On the surface, she kept on helping him. L78
 3 He followed his father's footsteps on the surface. L72

/ɪk'spleʊ.sɪv/
explosive n.

- 1 These explosives are used to destroy the building. L55
 2 The young man is eager to see the explosives. L57
 3 They are trying to remove the explosives from the bridge. L59

/vər'breɪʃən/
vibration n.

- 1 I was woken up by the vibration of the windows last night. L27
 2 was/when/who/why...
 3 If I turn it up, you can even feel the vibration of music. L16
 4 Some animals can feel vibrations in the sand. can/how/why...

/kə'læps/
collapse v. n.

- 1 The heavy rain caused the collapse of the roof.
 2 did/what/how/why...
 3 Thousands of buildings collapsed during the floods.
 4 When the cave collapsed, they were still inside, but managed to get out in the end. L67

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/drɪl/
drill v. n.

- 1 After drilling for several weeks, they finally found the oil. L49
 2 They were dismayed to find that nobody was drilling for them. L54
 3 They noticed with dismay that nobody was drilling for them. L86

/'kæp.sju:l/
capsule n.

- 1 [Story]: in a special capsule...
 2 The teacher informed all his students that the gifts were in a special capsule. L85
 3 They volunteered to live in a special capsule for ten days. L84
 4 They were standing in a circle around a special capsule. L86

/'leɪər/
layer n.

- 1 Glass must be packed in several layers of paper. L21
 2 Although she was wearing layers of clothes, she said she was cold.
 3 There is a layer of dust on the dressing-table. Please clean that.

/'leɪər/
layer n.

- 1 Glass must be packed in several layers of paper. L21
 2 Although she was wearing layers of clothes, she said she was cold.
 3 There is a layer of dust on the dressing-table. Please clean that.

/bɪ'ni:θ/
beneath prep.

- 1 A cat was beneath the table.
2 We sat beneath a shady tree.
did/where/who/why/when...
3 The body was hidden beneath a thin layer of soil.

/'laʊər/
lower v. adj.

- 1 You should have lowered your voice in his office. L65
2 People have a habit of lowering their voice when talking to an elderly. L59
3 It was obvious that he had hurt his lower back. L51

/'prəʊ.gres/
progress v. n.

make progress

- 1 His boss confirmed that they had made progress.
2 We're not finished yet, but we're making progress.
3 If everyone contribute to this, we'll make progress soon. L16

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/'smu:ðli/
smoothly adv.

- 1 go/run smoothly...
2 I'm sure that everything will go smoothly in the next few weeks. L78
3 Did everything go smoothly?
4 If things go smoothly, we will see each other next week. L16

- **on the surface**
- **in a special capsule**
- **layers of**
- **a layer of**
- **make progress**
- **go/run smoothly**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

88 Story+Expressions

- lose one's life...
- As it is...
- enable sb. to do sth.
- keep in touch with ...
- run out of ...
- lose heart...
- cause sb./sth. to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

lose one's life...

- He lost his life in an air crash.
- All the people in the building were saved, but a firefighter lost his life. L10
- He failed to get out the building, and lost his life there. L16

As it is...

- They hoped to finish the kitchen by Friday, but as it is they'll probably have to come back next week.
- We were hoping to have a holiday next week as it is, we may not be able to get away. L36 L43

enable sb. to do sth.

- This would enable you to walk again.
- The new test should enable doctors to detect the disease early. L65
- This dictionary will enable you to understand English words.

keep in touch with...

- I'll keep in touch with you.
- I should have kept in touch with him. L65
- We decided to keep in touch with each other. L22

run out of...

- We've run out of petrol/money/paper.
- They are so poor that they run out of food. L35
- I have been doing this for ten hours and I've run out of patience. L52

lose heart...

- We won't lose heart.
- We shouldn't lose heart. We may have another try. L65 L19
- Although we have run out of food, we will not lose heart.

cause sb./sth. to do sth.

- The pepper in the food caused me to sneeze.
- You've caused me to lose a whole valuable day's work.
- What caused you to change your mind?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

slip n.

- 1 a slip of the tongue...
- 2 Did I call you Richard? Sorry, Robert, just a slip of the tongue.
- 3 A slip of the tongue made me say Robert instead of Richard. L57
- 4 Did I say \$100? It must have been a slip of the tongue. L17

comedy n.

- 1 a comedy show...
- 2 They watched a comedy show together last night. did/what/who/why/where/when...
- 3 I looked at the paper, and realized that a new comedy show was coming soon. L20
- 4 To tell you the truth, this is actually a comedy show. L87

present v. adj.

- 1 [Story]: A comedy show would be presented.
- 2 They will be presenting a comedy show tonight. L13
- 3 A comedy show had been presented before...

queue v. n.

- 1 hold up the traffic/line L65+queue
- 2 Don't hold up the queue, man!
- 3 We stood in a queue for half an hour. did/who/why/how long...
- 4 [Story]: We had to queue for hours. 5 did/why/who/how long...

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

dull adj.

- 1 This the dullest comedy show I've ever seen. L8
- 2 All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.
- 3 I spent the whole week with the dullest man in the office. L3

artiste n. artist

- 1 We should keep in touch with the artiste we met last night. L88 L28
- 2 The artiste had a perfect alibi, so he couldn't commit the murder. L87
- 3 The artiste devoted his life to comedy show. L85

advertiser n.

- 1 On the surface, Leo and the advertiser are good friends. L88
- 2 They kept in touch with the old advertiser for a long time. L88
- 3 The advertiser had a perfect alibi. L87

- a slip of the tongue
- a comedy show
- hold up the queue...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

89 Story+Expressions

- do anything to do sth.
- the news get around ...
- feel disappointed
- at the beginning of a
- burst out laughing

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

do anything to do sth.

- I'll do anything to help you.
- I'll do anything to keep in touch with the artist. L88
- He'll do anything to win the election. L83

the news get around...

- The story has got around, and everyone knows about it.
- When the news got around, the bus driver went on strike. L84
- When the news got around, the students volunteered to drive the buses. L84

feel disappointed

- He felt disappointed but he tried to put forward a plan. L64
- When things went wrong, everyone felt disappointed. L71
- He felt disappointed but he tried to reach an agreement with them. L84

at the beginning of a

- We're going to Japan at the beginning of July.
- We'll run out of money at the beginning of April. L88
- At the beginning of the war, they moved to New York. L6

burst out laughing

- In the end, I couldn't control myself and burst out laughing.
- The moment I walked into the room, everyone burst out laughing. L60
- When I had finished my story, everyone burst out laughing. L7

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/tʃɪp/
chip n.

- 1 fish and chips...
- 2 The person who ate fish and chips was John. L28
- 3 Mum, can we have our fish and chips outside?
- 4 We run out of fish and chips. L88

overfish v.

- 1 [Story]: The oceans have been overfished.
- 2 have/why...
- 3 Leo feels disappointed, for they overfished the lake. L89
- 4 Leo confirmed that the villagers overfished the lake. L87

/dʒaɪənt/
giant adj.

- 1 giant fish...
- 2 The fisher claimed to have caught a giant fish. L82
- 3 They carried the giant fish to the village fair. L74
- 4 Where did you get this giant fish?

/'terəfaɪ/
terrify v.

- 1 The giant fish in the kitchen terrified me a great deal. L79
- 2 I was so terrified that ... L35
- 3 Grace was too terrified to reply.
- 4 was/why/who...
- 5 He had a lot of patience and tried not to terrify the little bird. L85

/'daɪvə/
diver n.

- 1 As a diver, I am aware of the danger. L70
- 2 Everybody was relieved to hear that all the divers were safe. L84
- 3 The diver knocked the fisher to the ground. L81

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

/ɔɪl / rɪg/
oil rig

- 1 As a diver, I am aware of the danger. L70
- 2 Everybody was relieved to hear that all the divers were safe. L84
- 3 The diver knocked the fisher to the ground. L81

/wɪt/
wit

- 1 be scared/frightened out of sb's wits ...
- 2 I'd be scared out of my wits if I were you. L40
- 3 If I had seen a ghost at your age, I would have been scared out of my wits. Beetlejuice (1988) L64

/keɪdʒ/
cage n.

- 1 There is a beautiful bird in the cage.
- 2 The beautiful bird in the cage was bought by my grandfather. L10
- 3 The kid noticed with dismay that the birds were not in the cage. L86

/ʃa:k/
shark n.

- 1 When he finally saw a real shark, he felt disappointed. L89
- 2 He devoted his life to studying all sorts of sharks. L85
- 3 He noticed that the shark was swimming towards him. L67

/weɪl/

whale n.

- 1 They saw the whale jumping out of the water yesterday afternoon. L35
- 2 What sort of whale did you see yesterday? L63
- 3 The authorities had the whale killed. L66

/ve'reieti/

variety n.

- 1 a variety of ...
- 2 He was fired for a variety of reasons.
- 3 This thing can be used in a variety of ways. L21
- 4 We'll need to discuss a variety of matters tonight.

/kɒd/ /skate/

cod n. skate n.

- 1 鳕鱼 xuě yú
- 2 鲑鱼 yáo yú

/'fækٹə/

factor n.

- 1 a variety of factors ...
- 2 It depends on a variety of factors.
- 3 Before long, they noticed a variety of factors that can destroy the whole building. L86

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

/kru:/

crew n.

- 1 When the fire and police crews arrived on the scene, the couple were already dead. L75
- 2 Two fire crews managed to put out the fire. L27 L67
- 3 The whole crews felt disappointed by this last night. L89

- be scared/frightened out of sb's wits
- a variety of

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

90 Story+Expressions

- it comes as a surprise to learn that
- protect a. from b.
- in length...
- the total absence of ...
- as a result...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

it comes as a surprise to learn that+句子

- It comes as a surprise to learn that he burst out laughing when he heard the news. L89
- It comes as a surprise to learn that they've kept in touch with each other for ten years. L88
- It comes as a surprise to learn that an elephant is holding up the queue. L89

protect a. from b.

- I need to protect you from yourself.
- An umbrella will protect you from the rain.
- I would protect you from anyone who tried to hurt you. Bugsy (1991) L28

in length...

- The river is 300 miles in length.
- The movie is nearly two hours in length.
- The whale is said to be over ten meters in length. L58

the (total) absence of...

- A major problem is the absence of water.
- In the absence of any evidence, the police had to let him go.
- In the absence of my mother, I will take charge of my little brother. L79

as a result...

- As a result, he'll have to leave tomorrow morning.
- As a result, he carried the bed to the roof of his house. L74
- As a result, he took charge of the company. L79

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/bə'lju:n/***balloon n.**

- 1 As a result, his father bought her a total of 30 balloons. L90 L85
 2 The children expressed their gratitude to the man who sent the balloons. L84
 3 It is known that Leo sent these balloons to the children. L82

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'roʊəl/***royal adj.**

- 1 Royal Air Force Station...
 2 royal palace
 3 It comes as a surprise to learn that the royal palace was burnt down last night. L90 L71
 4 When they saw their kid's "royal palace", they all burst out laughing. L89

*/bɪ'nɒkjələz/***binoculars n.**

- 1 Armed with my binoculars, we went to see a football game. L55
 2 The things that he saw through his binoculars were top secrets.
 3 Why do you carry your binoculars to a comedy show? L89

*/spaɪ/***spy v.**

- 1 spy on sb./sth.
 2 He changed into all black clothes and spied on Lucy. L81
 3 He has spied on that man for two weeks.
 4 I need to spy on her, and we're running out of food. Please go and get some. L88

*/træk/***track n.**

- 1 keep track of ...
 2 How do you keep track of time if you don't wear a watch ?
 3 As a doctor, Brooks has to keep track of the latest developments in medicine.
 4 I can keep track of things without using a computer. L20

- spy on sb./sth.
- keep track of

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

91 Story+Expressions

- seem to be doing ...
- make for sw.
- make out...
- soon afterwards
- be called in...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

seem to be doing...

- The brakes don't seem to be working.
- They seem to be telling a story right now. L27
- You seem to be taking a risk. L44

make for sw.

- It's getting late. We'd better go and make for home.
- We should have made for the bank of the river. L65
- He was able to make for the car in the end. L43

make out...

- I can read most of this, but I can't make out the last part. Can you?
- I can't make out your writing.
- If we turn it up, we may be able to make out what they're saying.

soon afterwards

- She had her supper and went out soon afterwards.
- Soon afterwards, he moved to London. L6
- Soon afterwards, they removed the gate from the front yard. L59

be called in...

to ask someone to come to help in a difficult situation

- All detectives were called in to help.
- The FBI has been called in to investigate.
- As the police could not keep order in the city, the military were called in to help. L13

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/fa:st/
fast **adv.**

- 1 fast asleep ...
- 2 When he went upstairs five minutes later, she was fast asleep.
- 3 I was fast asleep when my bedside phone began to ring. King of the Hill (1993)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

/lædə/

ladder **n.**

- 1 The police knocked him to the ground with a ladder. L81
- 2 I'm used to climbing the ladder up and down. L79
- 3 My wife urged me to buy a new ladder. L78

/təʊn/

tone **n.**

- 1 I don't like your tone.
- 2 'You must be Annie,' he said in a friendly tone.
- L17
- 3 Don't take that tone with me!

/ʃe:d/

shed **n.**

- 1 They intended to build a shed in their garden. L36
- 2 I look forward to seeing your new shed. L37
- 3 He managed to build a shed by himself. L67

/sə:'kæstɪk/

sarcastic **adj.**

- 1 Are you being sarcastic?
- 2 "Oh yes, that would be really easy," she said in a sarcastic voice. L15
- 3 Why are you always so sarcastic?

- **fast asleep**
- **Are you being sarcastic?**
- **Don't take that tone with me!**

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔（微信公众号）

92 Story+Expressions

- hate to do sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

hate to do sth.

- I hate to see birds in cages.
- do/who/why/what...
- I hate to see them laughing at you.

L35 L82

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'nəʊbəl/***noble adj.**

- 1 a noble gift / man...
 2 Don't take that tone with him, for he is a noble man. L92
 3 It is said that his father is a noble man. L58
 4 He is a noble man, we all admire him.

*/'mənju:mənt/***monument n.**

- 1 It comes as a surprise to learn that this monument was build in 1806. L90
 2 They watched a comedy show in front of the monument. L89
 3 The monument takes its name from the artist. L71

*/'stætʃu:/ /'libəti/***statue n. liberty n.**

- 1 the Statue of Liberty...
 2 I hate to visit the Statue of Liberty every summer. L92
 3 Let's hitchhike to the Statue of Liberty. L73
 4 People from all over the world came to see the Statue of Liberty every year. L71

*/prɪ'zent/***present v.**

- 1 [Story]: The Statue of Liberty was presented to the United States of America...
 2 was/what/why...
 3 All the books were presented to Leo.

*/'skʌlpər/***sculptor n.**

- 1 When the sculptor was still a kid, he would play truant from school. L73
 2 When the sculptor got home, he found his wife fast asleep. L92
 3 The sculptor seems to be working right now. L91

*/'æktʃuəl/***actual adj.**

- 1 Those were his actual words.
 2 This is an actual email from her office. Recount (2008)
 3 Can you give me your actual phone No.?

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'kɔ:pər/***copper n.**

- 1 It was made of copper. L80
 2 His father lost his life in a copper mine. L88
 3 did/who/how/where/when...
 4 It is known that the copper mine belongs to his family. L82

*/sə'pɔ:t/***support v.**

- 1 I will support you no matter what your father say. L68
 2 If they understand this, they will support you. L16
 3 When he was still a kid, he would volunteer to support his poor neighbors. L84

*/'freɪmwɜ:k/***framework n.**

- 1 The report provides a framework for further research.
 2 This bridge over the river has a steel framework.
 3 does/what/why...

*/'trænsپɔ:t/***transport v.**

- 1 He managed to transport all the valuable diamonds to his hometown. L67
 2 They called the hospital and transported him to the nearest one. did/who/where...
 3 All the statues were transported by train. L10

*/saɪt/***site n.**

- 1 A site has been found for the new school.
 2 The statue was moved to another site. L6
 3 camp site
 4 There are all sorts of activities for kids at the camp site. L63

/'pedɪstəl/
pedestal n.

- 1 [Story]: A pedestal had to be built.
2 A pedestal must be built.
3 A pedestal must have been built. L21
4 A pedestal will be built.
5 We'll need to remove the pedestal from the yard. L59

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

- a noble gift / man...
- camp site

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

93 Story+Expressions

- at the entrance of...
- take sth. to pieces...

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

at the entrance of...

- There is a monument at the entrance of the zoo.
- When you get the diamonds, I'll be at the entrance of the train station.
- I'll be waiting for you at the entrance of camp site. L13

take sth. to pieces...

- I had to take the washing machine to pieces so that we could figure out what was wrong. L59
- The sofa will have to be taken to pieces so that we could move it.
- They took the bed to pieces and moved it out of the room.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/ɪn'strʌkt/***instruct v.**

- 1 be instructed to do sth. L69
 2 be instructed in doing sth. = instruct sb.
 in sth./doing sth. : to teach someone how to do something:
 3 My job is to instruct her in English.
 4 He instructed me in building a boat.

Los Angeles

洛杉矶

*/rɪ'læktənt/***reluctant adj.**

- 1 be reluctant to do sth.
 2 He was reluctant to ask for help. L6
 3 My son is reluctant to go to the kindergarten.
 4 She was very reluctant to tell the truth. L87

*/weɪt/***weight n.**

- 1 heavy weights ...
 2 Please carry these heavy weights to that room. L74
 3 The doctor said he must not lift heavy weights.
 4 We should have moved these heavy weights. L65

*/ʌndə'wɔ:tə/***underwater adj.**

- 1 How long can you hold your breath underwater?
 2 Your partner must remain underwater until you return. The Guardian (2006)
 3 Take a deep breath and see how long you can stay underwater.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	结合习惯用法
	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
	6123456	

*/trɪsɪkəl/***tricycle n.**

- 1 His grandfather seems to be repairing the tricycle. L91
 2 When I saw him riding a tricycle, I burst out laughing. L35 L89
 3 He noticed with dismay that his tricycle wasn't there any more. L86

*/kəm'pi:t/***compete v.**

- 1 We're gonna compete against teams that have been doing this for years. L52 L28
 2 I had to compete against 19 other people for the job. did/why/how many people...
 3 They made us compete against each other. L57

*/jɑ:d/***yard n.**

- 1 The monument is one hundred yards away.
 2 Where is the house? I think that is almost four hundred yards away.
 3 The nearest toilet is three hundred yards away.

*/gə:spl/***gasp v.**

- 1 "Help me!" he gasped.
 2 The cold made her gasp. L57
 3 She gasped at the wonderful view.
 4 to inhale sharply in surprise or shock at someone or something

- be instructed in doing sth.
- = instruct sb. in sth./doing sth.
- be reluctant to do sth.
- compete against

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
 3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

94 Story+Expressions

- sb./sth. proved that + 句子
- hold sb's breath
- be accustomed to doing
- be popular with...
- be lined up

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南		原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456

sb./sth. proved that + 句子

- Tests have proved that the system works.
- He proved that he was right and we were moving in a circle. L86
- You've proved that you have a perfect alibi. L87

hold sb's breath

- When you swim, remember not to hold your breath.
- How long can you hold your breath?
- If you wanna pass the test, just don't hold your breath. L84

be accustomed to doing

- He was accustomed to getting up early.
- I'm not accustomed to drinking alcohol.
- I'm accustomed to changing into uniform before work. L81

be popular with...

- This dance is popular with young people.
- He's very popular with girls.
- The idea wasn't very popular with anybody at that time.

be lined up

- Why are people lined up?
- They were lined up in front of the house.
- were/who/why/where ...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'fæntəsi/***fantasy n.**

- 1 Steve's favorite fantasy was to own a big house and a splendid car.
 2 live in a fantasy world...
 3 If you didn't knock on my door that day I'd still be living in a fantasy world. Class Rank (2017)

*/æm'bæsədər/***ambassador n.**

- 1 The ambassador was reluctant to leave the room. L94
 2 The ambassador is accustomed to working till midnight. L94
 3 When the ambassador heard the news, he burst out laughing. L89

*/'frɪtʃfʊl/***frightful adj.**

- 1 They're making a frightful noise.
 2 When you think of it, it must smell absolutely frightful. Conduct Unbecoming (1975)
 3 You should have looked at their face. They looked frightful. L65

*/ɪk'stingwɪʃər/***fire extinguisher**

- 1 You've proved that you know how to use the fire extinguisher. L94
 2 The fire extinguisher is at the entrance of the building. L93
 3 He doesn't even have the nerve to use the fire extinguisher. L78

*/drɪli/***drily adv.**

- 1 "I'm reluctant to do that." he said drily. L94
 2 "I'm accustomed to getting up early" he answered drily. L94

*/'embəsi/***embassy n.**

- 1 As soon as I get out of here, I'm going to the embassy. Missing (1982) L14
 2 Where is the Japanese Embassy?
 3 A large crowd had gathered outside the American embassy.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'hevn/***heaven n.**

- 1 Good heavens!
 2 Good heavens. Are you still trying to win? The Princess Bride (1987)
 3 Good heavens!!! How can you hold your breath for ten minutes? L94

*/'beɪsmənt/***basement n.**

- 1 We should have checked the basement. L65
 2 Two detectives were keeping guard at the entrance of the basement. L93 L7
 3 They carried the bags to the basement. L74

*/'defɪnətlɪ/***definitely adv.**

- 1 The team will definitely lose if he doesn't play. L16
 2 I can't tell you definitely when I will come.
 3 I can definitely say that everything is under control. L62

*/poəst/***post v.**

- 1 [Story]: I must get that fellow posted...
 2 He's been posted to Beijing for six months.
 3 A guard was posted outside the building.
 4 I hope you'll be posted to my department.

*/ʃɒt/***shot n.**

- 1 [Story]: Someone fired a shot through my office window.
 2 did/why/who/when...
 3 It comes as a surprise to learn that he didn't fire a shot. L90
 4 If everything go smoothly, I won't fire a shot. L88 L16

- • live in a fantasy world
- • Good heavens!
- • fire a shot

95 Story+Expressions

- get into such a mess...
- set sth. on fire
- go on doing sth.

习惯用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他习惯用法
造句	四句型转换	其他单词+词性
指南	方式/地点/时间	原文摘抄+变
		6123456

get into such a mess...

- If you're going to the park, please don't get into a mess!
- How did you get into a mess with those guys?
- The biggest question is how they got into this mess.

set sth. on fire

- Don't smoke in the room. You're gonna set this room on fire.
- Armed with a torch, he set the whole village on fire. L55
- A spark set the woods on fire.

go on doing sth.

- We must go on giving him encouragement. L85
- We must go on trying.
- You should go on spying on him. L91

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔 (微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

*/'festɪvəl/***festival n.**

- 1 The Spring Festival lasted for 15 days last year.
- 2 did/what/how long...
- 3 I saw her talking to Leo at the festival. L35
- 4 did/who/where/when...

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

结合习惯用法

四句型转换

其他单词+词性

方式/地点/时间

原文摘抄+变

6123456

*/'læntən/***lantern n.**

- 1 They tried to set all the lanterns on fire last night. L95
- 2 This kind of lantern is very popular with little kids. L94
- 3 He claimed to have seen lots of lanterns in the sky. L82

*/'muː.vɪŋ/***moving adj.**

- 1 I find that music very moving. L4
- 2 Only then did I hear a very moving story from him. L79
- 3 People from all over the world know this moving story. L71

*/'spektəkəl/***spectacle n.**

- 1 make a spectacle of oneself:
to behave foolishly or improperly in public;
出洋相; 丢人现眼
- 2 Don't make a spectacle of yourself.
- 3 He got drunk and made a spectacle of himself in the club.

- make a spectacle of oneself

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(微信公众号)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

